# A SYSTEM ON A CHIP WITH MULTIPLE POWER PLANES AND ASSOCIATE POWER MANAGEMENT METHODS BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

# **CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION**

[0001]	The following co-pendi	ng and co-assigned application contains
related information and is hereby incorporated by reference:		
	Serial No. 09/	(Attorney Docket No. 1124-CA [2836-
P124US]), by Luo and North entitled "A SYSTEM-ON-CHIP WITH SOFT		
CACHE AND SYSTEMS AND METHODS USING THE SAME", filed		
	, 2001; and	
		(Attorney Docket No. 1138-EPD
[2836-P140L	Serial No. 09/	(Attorney Docket No. 1138-EPD ntitled " CIRCUITS AND METHODS FOR
	Serial No. 09/ JS] by PIllay and Rao e	

# **FIELD OF THE INVENTION**

[0002] The present invention relates in general to integrated circuits and in particular, to a system-on-a-chip with a system on a chip with multiple power planes and associate power management methods.

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

#### **DESCRIPTION OF THE RELATED ART**

[0003] Handheld personal electronic appliances have become increasingly popular as new technologies have produced affordable devices with a high degree of functionality. One such device is the portable digital audio player, which downloads digital audio data, stores those data in a read-writable memory, and converts those data into audio on user demand. The digital data is downloaded from a network or retrieved from a fixed medium, such as a compact disk, in one of several forms, including the MPEG Layer 3, ACC, and MS Audio protocols. An audio decoder, supported by appropriate firmware, retrieves the encoded data from memory, applies the corresponding decoding algorithm and coverts the decoded data into analog form for driving a headset or other portable speaker system.

[0004] The use of systems-on-a-chip in the design and construction of handheld digital music players allows all the requisite functionality to be contained in a compact, relatively inexpensive unit. Notwithstanding, the integration of the major functions of a digital music player into a single chip device is not a trivial task. Not only must the device include the processing power capable of performing digital to audio conversion efficiently, it must also be capable of interfacing with various sources of digitally encoded data, support different user I/O options, such as LCD displays and headphones, and operate in conjunction with sufficiently large on-chip and off-chip memory spaces storing

(programming code and data) needed to produce high-quality audio.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[0005] The principles of the present invention provide for power management systems and methods suitable for use in systems on a chip. According to one such embodiment, a system on a chip is disclosed which includes a first and second power planes for powering a core logic portion of the system on a chip and a second power plane for powering selected analog circuitry of the system on a chip. Clock generation circuitry is included for generating the clocks for clocking operations of selected circuits of the system on a chip in response to a signal generated by an oscillator. Power control circuitry is provided for implementing power management in at least two different modes. In a first mode, the power to the first and second power planes is switched off, while the oscillator is enabled. In the second mode, the clock generation circuitry is disabled, although power is switched to the first and second power planes, and the oscillator being enabled.

[0006] According to one of the disclosed methods, a power management technique is provided for a system on a chip including core logic powered by a first power plane, analog circuitry powered by a second power plane and clock generation circuitry for generating clocks for operating selected circuitry of the core logic in response to a clock signal generated by an oscillator. During a normal mode of operation, the first and second power planes are powered and

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

the oscillator is kept running. In a superspan bimode, power selectively terminated to the first and second power planes and the oscillator is again kept running. Finally, during a standby mode, the first and second power planes are powered and the clock generation circuitry is disabled. Although the oscillator remains running.

[0007] In one particular system on a chip embodiment of the present invention, both a microprocessor and a first digital signal processor are included operating from a first bus. The microprocessor operates in response to a microprocessor clock and the digital signal processor operates in response to a DSP clock. A first power plane provides power to the microprocessor and the digital signal processor. The system on a chip further includes analog circuitry operating from a second bus coupled to the first bus by a bridge and powered from a second power plane. Power control circuitry is operable in a first standby mode to decouple power from the first and second power planes and in a second standby mode to terminate generation of the microprocessor and DSP clocks while maintaining power to the first and second power planes.

[0008] The principles of the present invention have substantial advantages over the prior art. Among other things, the use of different power planes allows each power plane to be provided with the minimum amount of power required to drive the circuitry coupled to that power plane. Additionally, it allows selected power planes to be individually switched on and off for power saving purposes. Additionally, while selected power planes are turned off for power savings, such

circuitry as the on-board oscillator and real time clock can continue to operate from their own independent source such that the device can quickly transition to a full operating mode. Finally, power can be maintained to selected ones of the power planes and the clocks to the primary clock circuitry on the device disabled. In this mode, the clock devices are not consuming power, although they can be rapidly returned to full operation by simply re-enabling the clock generation circuitry.

## **BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

[0009] For a more complete understanding of the present invention, and the advantages thereof, reference is now made to the following descriptions taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings, in which: FIGURE 1 is a high level functional block diagram of a system-on-a-chip system embodying the principles of the present invention;

[0010] FIGURE 2A is a functional block diagram of the bus architecture of the system of FIGURE 1;

[0011] FIGURES 2B -2E are exemplary timing diagrams illustrating the operation of the bus architecture of FIGURE 2A, where FIGURES 2B and 2C illustrate a typical transaction from the global AHB domain to the local AHB domain and FIGURES 2D and 2E illustrate a typical transaction from the local AHB domain to the global AHB domain;

- [0012] FIGURE 3 is a high level functional block diagram of the AHB/SP slave interface of FIGURE 1;
- [0013] FIGURE 4A is a high level functional block diagram of the GFACE of FIGURE 1;
- [0014] FIGURE 4B is a timing diagram illustrating a possible memory conflict when one DSP access and one microprocessor access occur simultaneously;
- [0015] FIGURE 4C is a timing diagram illustrating a possible conflict when three DSP accesses and one microprocessor access to global memory occur simultaneously;
- [0016] FIGURE 5 is a block diagram illustrating the TIC bus connections;
- [0017] FIGURE 6A is a functional block diagram of the preferred LCD interface / controller of the system of FIGURE 1;.
- [0018] FIGURE 6B illustrates the preferred connections to an external LCD panel through the LCD interface of FIGURE 6A;
- [0019] FIGURE 6C is a diagram describing the general operation of LCD interface/controller and associated display panel;
- [0020] FIGURE 6D is a diagram generally illustrating the mapping of display data in the frame buffer to the display panel;
- [0021] FIGURE 6E is a timing diagram of the horizontal timing generated by the LCD controller to drive the display panel;

- [0022] FIGURE 6F is a functional block diagram further detailing the datapath block of FIGURE 6A;
- [0023] FIGURE 6G is a functional block diagram depicting in further detail the clock generation block of FIGURE 6A;
- [0024] FIGURE 6H is a timing diagram depicting the relationship between selected clocks and control signals utilized by the clock generation block;
- [0025] FIGURE 6I is a block diagram of the H & V timing generation block of FIGURE 6A;
- [0026] FIGURE 6J is a timing diagram depicting the relationship between the k and control signals utilized by the H & V timing generation block;
- [0027] FIGURE 6K is a functional block diagram of the address generation circuitry of the bus master block of FIGURE 6A;
- [0028] FIGURE 6L is timing diagram of an exemplary frame buffer mapping;
- [0029] FIGURE 6M is a high level functional block diagram of the frame rate modulator circuit of FIGURE 6F;
- [0030] FIGURE 6N is a functional block diagram of a selected one of the generator circuits of FIGURE 6M;
- [0031] FIGURE 6O is a functional block diagram of the swap, swizzle and collection buffer circuits of datapath block of 6F;
- [0032] FIGURE 6P is a diagram of illustrating a typical bit-swapping operation;

WSM Docket No.

- [0033] FIGURE 6Q is a functional block diagram of the RB swap staging buffer of FIGURE 6O;
- [0034] FIGURE 6R is a diagram illustrating a typical a 8-bit data swizzle;
- [0035] FIGURE 6S is a timing diagram illustrating typical LCD panel power-up and power-down operations;
- [0036] FIGURE 7A is a functional block diagram of the DMA engine of FIGURE 1; FIGURE 7B is a functional block diagram of a selected one of the DMA channels shown in FIGURE 7A;
- [0037] FIGURE 8 is a diagram illustrating the address space supported by the static memory controller of FIGURE 1;
- [0038] FIGURE 9 is a functional block diagram of the interrupt controller block of FIGURE 1;
- [0039] FIGURE 10A is a functional diagram of the ADC / volume control block of FIGURE 1;
- [0040] FIGURE 10B is an exemplary work flow diagram illustrating the typical operation of the ADC / volume control block of FIGURE 10B;
- [0041] FIGURE 11A is a functional block diagram of the PLL / clock control blocks of FIGURE 1;
- [0042] FIGURE 11B is a functional block diagram of the PLL / clock control blocks of FIGURE 1;
- [0043] FIGURE 11C is a functional block diagram of the phase lock detector of FIGURE 11B;

WSM Docket No.

FIGURE 1D is a functional block diagram of the frequency lock [0044] detector of FIGURE 11B;

[0045] FIGURE 12A is a block diagram illustrating exemplary connections between the system of FIGURE 1 and an external serial EEPROM;

FIGURE 12B is a timing diagram of illustrating the clock and data [0046] relationship for the interconnections shown in FIGURE 12A;

FIGURE 12C is a diagram illustrating the transfer of data and [0047] addresses across the interconnections of FIGURE 12A;

FIGURE 13A is a functional block diagram of the USB port of [0048]

FIGURE 1; FIGURE 13B is a diagram illustrating the alternate configurations of the USB port of FIGURE 13A;

FIGURE 14 is a diagram of an exemplary debug block [0049]

FIGURE 15 is a high level functional block diagram of the [0050] interprocessor communications block of the system of FIGURE 1;

FIGURE 16A is a functional block diagram of the digital audio [0051] input/output block of FIGURE 1;

FIGURE 16B is a functional block diagram of the output block of [0052] FIGURE 16A:

FIGURE 16C is a timing diagram illustrating the typical [0053] transmission of data from the output block of FIGURE 16B;

FIGURE 16D is a functional block diagram of the input block of [0054] FIGURE 16A;

WSM Docket No.

[0055] FIGURE 17 is a functional block diagram of the general purpose input/output (GPIO) block of FIGURE 1;

[0056] FIGURE 18 is a functional block diagram of the timer block of

FIGURE 1; FIGURE 19A is a conceptual diagram of the soft cache system of

FIGURE 1; FIGURE 19B is a flow chart describing the operation of the soft cache system of FIGURE 19A;

[0057] FIGURE 19C is a logical diagram of the soft cache system of FIGURE 19A; FIGURE 20A is a block diagram of the power planes of the system of FIGURE 1; FIGURE 20B is a block diagram of illustrating the power mode transitions for the system of FIGURE 1;

[0058] FIGURE 20C is a flow chart illustrating a procedure for power mode transition for the system of FIGURE 1; and

[0059] FIGURE 21 is a diagram of the pin-out the system of FIGURE 1, as packaged in a 128-pin QFP package.

## **DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS**

[0060] The principles of the present invention and their advantages are best understood by referring to the illustrated embodiment depicted in FIGURE 1- 21 of the drawings, in which like numbers designate like parts.

[0061] FIGURE 1 is a high level functional block diagram of a system-on-a-chip system 100 embodying the principles of the present invention. System 100 is based on a microprocessor core, a digital signal processor, a set of peripherals, and associated buses, each of which will be discussed in further detail below. Among the possible applications of system 100 are multi-standard portable audio devices processing digital audio data in such formats as a MP3, AAC, and MS-Audio.

[0062] In the preferred embodiment, system 100 includes an ARM7TDMI microprocessor core 101, available from ARM Ltd. Cambridge, United Kingdom.

Microprocessor core 101 serves various functions including interfacing the peripherals, packing and unpacking data, and acts as the system master which determines the overall function and state of the chip.

[0063] Digital signal processor (DSP) 102 is a computation-intensive engine which takes dispatched data from microprocessor 101 and then decodes and controls the playback of those data through the peripheral ports.

[0064] The system bus architecture is based on ARM Advanced
Microprocessor Bus Architecture (AMBA) bus system. The specific requirements
for the AMBA bus architecture are in accordance with the ARM Ltd. AMBA

specification. A main or high-speed bus(AHB) bus 103 is connected to high bandwidth blocks which require more frequent access to the memory. Microprocessor 101 and its local memory (RAM/ROM) 137 operate from main bus 103 via a local AHB bus 104 and an interface 105 which bridges local AHB bus 104 and main AHB bus 103. This configuration minimizes bus conflicts when microprocessor 101 is running a program and another bus master, for example the DMA engine, is transferring data through main AHB bus 103. Among the other devices operating directly off main AHB bus 103 [0065] are a 4-channel DMA engine 106, and flash/SRAM interface 107, including an external memory controller, which maps up to 512 MByte external memory into the microprocessor memory space as an extension of on-chip memory, a test interface controller (TIC) 108, arbiter 109 and LCD interface 110. Test Interface Controller (TIC) 108 can take over the bus control from microprocessor 101 and mimic the bus cycle in order to stimulate the blocks connected to AHB/APB buses. Arbiter 109 arbitrates bus requests on main bus 103. LCD interface 110 supports connections to various LCD panels (since the display may require a large frame buffer, display controller 110 operates from the high speed bus). An AHB-DSP interface 111, which is a slave to main bus 103, [0066] allows microprocessor 101 to move data block to and from DSP memory. System 100 also employs an AMBA Advanced Peripheral Bus [0067] (APB) 112 which links to the system low band-width peripherals. APB 112 operates from main bus 103 through AHB / APB bridge 113, which is also a

slave to main bus 103. In the illustrated embodiment, all peripherals interfacing with system-external devices operate from APB bus 112.

The peripherals operating from APB bus 112 include a USB slave interface 114 which supports communications between system 100 and a personal computer (PC)or similar device. When system 100 is used in a portable digital music appliance, this interface enables the quick downloading files from the PC to the portable audio system. UARTa115 is a serial port is fully 16550 compatible and supports various baud rates. It also provides a legacy communication channel to an associated PC.

[0069] Battery/Volume Checker 116 is an on-chip analog-to-digital converter (ADC) which takes two analog inputs and provides a digital signal with 8-bit precision at up to a 100Hz sample rate for use in battery level monitoring and volume switch checking.

[0070] An SPI port 117 also operates from APB bus 112 for use with various serial storage media such as Multi-Media Card (MMC). A master mode compatable Standard Serial Interface (SSI) port 118 provides another common serial interface to a range of devices such as EEPROM, DAC/Codecs and some displays.

[0071] Security/Reset port 119 operates in conjunction with security code in ROM to determine the appropriate chip initialization procedure and a boot-up sequence. Generally, this block makes certain system blocks invisible to the external user, as enabled by the security code.

[0072] A 32KHz on-chip oscillator 120 operates in conjunction with a direct connection to an off-chip 32.768KHz crystal/ and provides the reference clock to the on-chip PLLs 121a and 121b. PLLs 121a,b provide different clocks that are needed by various blocks using a set of user- programmable dividers. Additionally, built-in self-calibration circuitry allows optimization of the bias currents in order to overcome changes in the working environment. Clock control is implemented through block 122 which is the main "valve" for all on-chip clock sources. It can be configured to provide full speed or a fraction of the full speed to each clock domain, as well to gate a clock off for power saving if certain block is not used in a particular application.

[0073] Three freeruning timers 123a,c operate off APB bus 112 in support of microprocessor 101. RTC block 124 provides real time clock information for the system.

[0074] Memory Remapping 125a block a comprises 3 different memory mapping schemes for different on-chip and off-chip memory configurations.

[0075] Interrupt Controller 126 collects all interrupt sources and generates request to microprocessor 101 and/or DSP 102.

[0076] DSP 102 operates in conjunction with a DSP Peripheral Bus 127. Inter-Processor Communication (IPC) block 128 provides hardware for synchronization and message exchange between microprocessor 101 and DSP 102 via DSP Peripheral bus 127 and APB bus 112.

[0077] I<sup>2</sup>S In/Out block 129, which also operates off both APB bus 112 and DSP Peripheral bus 127, supports a 2-channel input in either I<sup>2</sup>S mode or burst mode and aa4-channel output mode. It can be used, for example, to connect to an external ADC/DAC or transport-demuxer.

[0078] Pulse width modulator (PWM) 130 provides an analog audio output requiring minimal external passive components and shares two of the four channels output from I2S output block.

[0079] DSP Timer/STC block 131 provides timer and system timing clocks to the DSP sub-system for the purpose of synchronizing DSP routines.

[0080] GFace 132 interfaces DSP 102 with main bus 102, through slave AHB / DSP interface 111, and with the DSP memory. In the illustrated embodiment, DSP 102 is associated with dedicated on-chip Program Memory 133 and two blocks Data (Data0 and Data1) Memory 134 and 135. Global RAM 136 serves the communication buffer between microprocessor 101 and DSP 102. All DSP memories 133 - 135 and the Global RAMa136 are mapped into the microprocessor address space so that microprocessor 101 can initialize those memories and pass data to DSP 102. Global RAM 136 is also mapped into the DSP Program/Data0/Datal address space, for DSP access.

[0081] The preferred bus structure of system 100 is shown in FIGURE 2A in additional detail. Exemplary timing diagrams are provided as FIGURES 2B-2E, where FIGURES 2B and 2C illustrate a typical transaction from the global

AHB domain to the local AHB domain and FIGURES 2D and 2E illustrate a typical transaction from the local AHB domain to the global AHB domain.

[0082] A Local AHB Arbiter (Block 201) controls the arbitration between the microprocessor 101 master and a Local AHB Sync & Handshake (AHBIF) master 202, with AHBIF master 202 given the highest priority and microprocessor 101 the lowest priority when granting control of the Local AHB bus 104. If no other bus masters are requesting access to Local AHB bus 104, then microprocessor 101 is granted the default access to the bus.

[0083] AHBIF master 202 performs synchronization and handshaking of transactions from Local bus 104, and Global bus 103 and vice versa.

[0084] If a given master on Local AHB bus 104 initiates a transaction to a slave on a Global AHB bus 103, as illustrated in the timing diagrams of FIGURES 2D and 2E, the following operations take place:

- (1) The initiating master arbitrates for the Local bus 104 and once it receives control, transmits valid transaction data and control signals;
- (2) AHBIF 202 acts as a slave to the Local AHB arbiter 201, capturing the valid transaction data and control signals from the Local bus 104 and generating bus request signal to Global AHB arbiter (Block 109).

A flag is also set indicating entry into a wait state for the completion of transaction by the Local AHB

#### master;

- (3) AHBIF master 201 acts as a master to the Global AHB arbiter, in this scenario, arbitrating for Global bus 103. After securing control of Global bus 103, AHBIF master transmits the captured transaction data and control signals on the Global bus 103; and
- (4) The target global slave 204 on Global bus 103 decodes the transaction data and control signals and indicates completion of the transaction by setting a flag. AHBIF master 202 detects the flag and in turn sets a flag to indicate completion of transaction to the Local AHB master.

[0085] If a master operating from Global AHB bus 103 initiates a transaction to a slave on the Local AHB bus 104, as illustrated in the timing diagrams of FIGURES 2B and 2C, the following operations are performed:

- (1) The given master arbitrates for the Global bus 103 and, once securing control of the bus, transmits valid transaction data and control signals;
- (2) AHBIF 202 acts as a slave to Global AHB arbiter 109, capturing the valid transaction data and control signals from Global bus 103 and generating a

WSM Docket No.

bus request signal to Local AHB arbiter 201. AHBIF master 202 also sets a flag to indicate entry into a wait state for the completion of transaction by the Global AHB master 205;

- (3) AHBIF 202 acts as a master to the Local AHB arbiter and arbitrates for the Local bus 104. After securing control of the bus, it transmits the captured transaction data and control on the Local bus 104; and
- (4) The target slave 206 on Local bus 104 decodes the transaction data and control signals and indicates completion of transaction by setting a flag. In response, AHBIF master 202 sets a flag to indicate completion of transaction to the given Global AHB master 205.

[0086] Deadlock situations can arise if two masters, neither of which is AHBIF master 202, have control of the Local bus 104 and Global bus 103 respectively and are attempting to access a slave on the opposite side of AHBIF master 202. Deadlocks are broken by forcing completion of the transaction initiated by the Local AHB master with a retry response. This enables AHBIF

19

202 to become a master on the Local AHB bus and complete the transaction initiated by the Global AHB master.

[0087] One possible deadlock scenario is as follows:

- 1) AHBIF 202 detects a valid transaction from a Local AHB master 203 to be passed on to a slave on Global AHB bus 103, generates a bus request signal to Global AHB arbiter 109 and pulls signal LHREADY low to indicate entering into a wait state for the completion of the transaction by the Local AHB master.
- 2) Before AHBIF 202 is granted access to Global AHB bus 103, the current master or a higher priority master is granted Global AHB bus 103 to access a slave on the Local AHB bus.
- AHBIF 202 detects a valid transaction from a Global AHB master 205 to be passed on to a slave on Local AHB bus 104, generates a bus request signal to local AHB arbiter 201 and pulls signal GHREADY low to indicate entry into a wait state for completion of the transaction by the Global AHB master 205.
- 4) A deadlock situation has occurred since two masters, neither of which is AHBIF 202 have control of Local bus 104

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US and Global AHB bus 103 and are attempting to access a slave on the opposite side of the AHBIF. The AHBIF can therefore not become a master on either side of the global and local busses to break the deadlock.

[0088] Preferably, testing of system 100 includes testing of the following bus cycle sequences:

- (1) Local AHB master reads/writes to multiple Local AHB slaves with multiple Global AHB master reads/writes to multiple Local AHB slaves;
- (2) Multiple Global AHB master reads/writes to multiple Global AHB slaves with Local AHB master reads/writes to multiple Global AHB slaves
- 3) Various deadlock creation sequences.

[0089] AHB to DSP Slave Interface 111 allows microprocessor 101 to send read and write requests to the different local memories 133 - 135 of DSP 102 and global memory 136. Additionally, interface 111 synchronizes the microprocessor and DSP clock domains and performs the necessary handshaking. In particular, Interface 111 responds to transaction requests from the currently granted local or global AHB master 203/205. The transaction requests are then passed to GFACE 132 and the individual memory selection

signals, (x\_sel, y\_sel, p\_sel, and g\_sel) decoded from the corresponding address. AHB\_DSP slave interface 111 is shown in further detail in FIGURE 3 [0090] AHB to DSP slave interface 111 operates between two different clock domains. Preferably, the frequency of the DSP clock domain is an integer multiple of the frequency of the microprocessor clock domain and the edges of both domains are aligned for every microprocessor clock domain rising edge. It therefore becomes necessary to prevent the microprocessor from performing multiple memory accesses during its cycle when DSP domain is based on a faster clock. Preferably, a signal is taken from the clock generator which indicates to Interface 111 the last DSP cycle before the next microprocessor clock domain rising edge. From this, a microprocessor memory access can be restricted to only on first cycle, if there is no DSP conflict, or to the second cycle if a DSP conflict occurs. All other cycles are locked to the DSP.

In one preferred method of synchronization, the AHB transaction signals are first latched by HCLK (AHB high-speed clock), then re-latched by DSP clock in order to avoid the glitches. The latched signals in DSP clock domain are sent to global memory interface (GFACE) 132 for further decoding and arbitration with the DSP memory accesses. A state machine is provided to prevent redundant accesses since HCLK can be slower than DSP clock. For instance, when DSP clock is twice as fast as HCLK, AHB transaction requests in one full HCLK cycle could be interpreted as two full cycles of memory access

requests in DSP clock domain. The state machine will issue only one memory access bus cycle in DSP clock domain instead of two.

[0092] GFACE 132, shown in further detail in FIGURE 4A, interfaces microprocessor 101 and DSP 102 to both the global (g) program (p) and DSP specific memory spaces (x, y, z). GFACE 132 includes a multiplexor 401, arbitration logic 402 and bus cycle generation logic 403. In particular, GFACE 132 manages all accesses to these memory spaces, resolves conflicting accesses from the DSP and the microprocessor when they arise, and serializes parallel accesses to the global memory from the DSP. Generally, conflicts are resolved by extending the low clock phase of the DSP when microprocessor 101 and DSP 102 both access the same memory module.

[0093] When DSP 102 and microprocessor 101 attempt to access the same memory block at the same time, GFACE 132 performs the following operations:

[0094] 1) The first cycle is the setup cycle in which the GFACE detects the conflicts and arbitrates the access sequence. Since the global memory can be mapped into DSP X/Y/P space, its arbitration sequence is: DSP access g memory via x space, DSP access g memory via y space, DSP access g memory via p space and microprocessor 101 access g memory. For all three physical memory modules X, Y and P, the arbitration sequence is DSP 102 access first, then microprocessor 101 access.

- [0095] 2) In the second cycle, GFACE accesses the proper memory X, Y, Z module according to the arbitration sequence listed above. If it is a read from DSP, the data fetched from the memory module are registered in GFACE 132. Meanwhile, the DSP clock low phase is extended. This step is repeated as necessary to complete all the other accesses initiated by DSP, and register the data in GFACE 132. The DSP clock is kept low for the entire cycle.
- [0096] 3) The last cycle completes the memory access initiated by microprocessor 101. All registered data in GFACE is sent to DSP and the DSP clock is released.

[0097] In order to better illustrate the scenarios of access conflicts, exemplary waveforms are provided as FIGURES 4B and 4C. FIGURE 4B illustrates the possible conflict for X/Y/P/G memory when one DSP access and one microprocessor access occurs simultaneously. FIG URE 4C illustrates the worst case conflict which occurs in the global (g) memory module when DSP issues three accesses to the g memory and microprocessor 101 attempts to access the g memory as well.

[0098] A signal is provided between DSP 102 and GFACE 132 which allows the DSP to request a one cycle stretch in the memory timing. When the DSP asserts this signal, and provided that there are no conflicts on that cycle, GFACE 132 stretches both the DSP and RAM clocks. (If there is a conflict between the DSP and the microprocessor, there be no need for a stretch, because the DSP will be automatically stalled one cycle.)

[0099] In the illustrated embodiment, DSP 102 operates in conjunction three memory busses designated X, Y, and P, shown collectively at 150 in FIGURE 1. Notwithstanding, Global Memory 136, has only one port. Therefore, in the event that more than one of these busses attempts to access the global memory at the same time, GFACE 132 will serialize the requests to avoid conflicts. GFACE 132 also extends the high phase of the DSP clock while it performs the necessary number of accesses to global memory. Upon completing all accesses, GFACE 132 completes the DSP memory access cycles, and returns the DSP clock to its usual duty cycle. If microprocessor 101 requests an access to the global memory space during this process, the DSP is backed off for an additional clock cycle for the microprocessor access.

[00100] In the preferred embodiment, GFACE 132 does not include coherency hardware and therefore, coherency is maintained in the software programming.

[00101] Preferably, writeback registers pipeline the write data such that the data written to memory is one write cycle behind. Consequently, data from the first write will not be placed in RAM until another write takes place to that same memory block.

[00102] The possible coherency problems which are dealt with in software include:

 DSP write to location alpha follow by a microprocessor write to location alpha followed by any DSP write to the same memory. This problem applies to all four memories, x, y, p and global. The result is after the second DSP write, the contents of the writeback register are placed into location alpha. This overwrites the microprocessor write data with stale data from the first DSP write.

- 2) DSP write to location alpha followed by a microprocessor read of location alpha. This problem applies to all four memories, x, y, p and global. In this case the new DSP data are in the writeback register, until the next DSP write to the same memory, so the microprocessor reads stale data.
- either x, y, or p spaces followed by a DSP write to location alpha in global memory by a different space (x, y, or p) followed by any write to this second memory space, and followed by another DSP write to the first memory space. This problem arises because each space is associated with a dedicated writeback register, consequently when the fourth write is executed, the data in location alpha are overwritten by the data of the first write.
- 4) DSP write to location alpha in global memory by

either x, y, or p spaces followed by a DSP read from location alpha in global memory by a different space (x, y, or p). In this case the new DSP data is in the writeback register, until the next DSP write to the first memory, so the DSP will read stale data from the second memory space.

[00103] A wrapper 138 surrounds microprocessor 101 such that microprocessor 101 becomes a standard AMBA – AHB master / slave device.

[00104] AHB/APB Bridge 113 spans main (global) bus 103 and APB bus 112. When any AHB bus master requests access the address space located on APB bus, bridge 113 translates the signals from the AHB to the APB format, as well as re-times the signals when main bus is operating at a HCLK (high-speed clock) rate higher than that of the peripheral bus clock (PCLK).

[00105] Microprocessor 101 operates in conjunction with dedicated on-chip memory subsystem 137, which includes an 8Kx32 RAM and a 6Kx16 ROM connected to the local AHB bus 104. Microprocessor 101 can perform byte, half-word and word access to both the RAM and ROM sections. Memory interface logic makes the RAM and ROM AHB compliant slave devices. Since the preferred ROM space is 16-bit wide only, when Microprocessor 101 performs a word-read, wrapper 138 issues two consecutive reads to the ROM and concatenates the two read results into a 32-bit word, which is returned to Microprocessor 101.

[00106] In order to enhance the testability and reduce the production testing time, a weak-write test circuit 139 is built in the RAM second to accelerate the RAM retention test speed. The RAM can be divided into two equal size banks which can be put into weak-write mode independently, so that when one bank is in test mode and the other one can be used as scratch pad for the testing program.

an AHB bus master with the highest priority. The TIC bus connections 501 are shown in the block diagram of FIGURE 5. When system debugging is allowed in a test or non-security mode, the TIC drivers allow access of all address-mapped registers and/or memory in the entire system for debugging purpose. When TIC mode is enabled, TIC uses 32 pins of the external memory interface as a 32-bit bi-directional data bus. An external clock (EXTCLKI) is used to clock main AHB bus 103, as well as for synchronizing main AHB bus 103 with the TIC bus, so that an external TIC controller is able to access the main AHB bus as a AMBA bus master through the TIC block. When TIC 100 is engaged by external TIC driver software, the user can stimulate all the Microprocessor 101 devices through TIC directly without requiring intervention by Microprocessor 101 processor.

[00108] Display interface 110 includes an LCD Display Controller which supports an interface to any one of a number of LCD displays. In particular, system 100 can drive STN (Super Twisted Pneumatic) display panels which

have the advantage of requiring less power than similar active TFT panels. The LCD controller shares pins with the General Purpose Input / Output port (GPIO)140 described further below.

[00109] Character displays have a small display resolution. Usually the LCD controller is integrated on the panel and generally comprises a character generator. Graphics functionality is typically not included. For those character display panels which do not have and LCD controller on board, the row/column timing as well as the character data that drives the panel must be generated externally, such as by system 100.

[00110] Graphics displays have a higher display resolution. Usually 128 lines or greater. For example, 64x128, 320x240, and 640x480. These types of panels can have an integrated controller IC as well. Communication with the panel is implemented through a standard interface. These panels have slightly more complex (versus character generator) LDC controllers that require external SRAM. (For very complex graphics, a graphics IC (i.e. super VGA) is usually used to drive the panel.)

[00111] Advantageously, by integrating the LCD controller into system 100 display resolution gap between the low end (character displays) and the high end (graphics ICs) by supporting a 320x240 type resolution is bridged. Cost savings due to integration and cost savings due to tailoring the required functionality are also benefits.

[00112] FIGURE 6A is a functional block diagram of the preferred LCD interface/ display controller 110. In this embodiment, the display interface includes both an AHB bus master 601 and an AHB slave 602 operating off main AHB bus 103. The preferred connections to the external LCD panel are shown in FIGURE 6B. For the purposes of the present discussion, the LCD controller register definitions are provided in Tables 1-29.

The general operation of LCD interface/controller 110 can be [00113] generally described in reference to FIGURE 6C, and will be described in further detail below. Clock generation block 603 generates the internal pixel clock (iPixClk) by dividing down the AHBCLK from bus 103 by a prescale factor selected as a function of the frame refresh rate. This clock drives the majority of the display controller logic and represents a single pixel or subpixel. The internal clock iCL2 is generated by dividing down the pixel clock as a function of width of the interface bus to the external device, and is used internally for such operations as data muxing iCL2 allows multiple dots to be clocked across the data bus per cycle. Clock CL2\_OUT (CL2) is the LCD Dot Clock clocking between one and eight dots per cycle to the external panel, and is similar to iCL2, with dead time inserted for transition of clock CL1. For example, if CLK2=PIXCLK, then one dot is sent to the display per CLK2 period, if CLK2= PIXCLK/2, then two dots are sent, and if CLK2=PIXCLK/4, then four dots are sent.

Clock CL1 is the Line Latch Pulse and is generated by horizontal -vertical (H&V) timing generator 605 for one CL2 clock period at the end of a display line (as indicated by LastDot). CL1 is used to latch lines of dots into the display secondary buffer for driving the display and increments the LCD panel row driver in preparation to generate the next display line. Additionally, H&V timing generator 605 generates the LCD Frame Synchronization (FRM) and LCD AC Bias Drive signals. The FRM signal is used by the display panel to reset to row line 1 and is generated after receiving an End of Frame signal from Bus Master 601. MCLK is used to insure that the display driver voltage frequency does not fall to DC.

[00115] Data path 604 includes a FIFO 606 which is kept filled with data from main bus 103 by Bus Master 601 (in the AHB clock domain) as a function of the programmable threshold signal FIFOThrsh. Data is read from the FIFO in the pixel clock domain as a function of the number of bits per pixel required for the external display panel. The data retrieved from FIFO is used to address a palette which supports gray scaling. Data path 604 also performs operations such as frame rate modulation, swizzle and red/blue swaps. Frame rate modulation is a technique used by LCD controllers to utilize the slow response time of the liquid crystal to produce gray shades. This method varies the duty cycle of the LCD pixels in time over multiple frames. These features also will be discussed further below.

[00116] As shown in FIGURE 6D, for a monochrome display, the system 100 frame buffer represents a pixel as a number of bits. These bits are then converted, parallel-to-serial, to dots on the display. Each pixel in the frame buffer represents a dot on the display. For color displays, the system 100 represents a sub-pixel as a number of bits. Collectively, three sub-pixels represent a pixel. Color displays therefore require three times the number of bits than the monochrome representation to define a pixel (display resolution and #bits/sub-pixel are the same). The sub-pixels are then converted parallel-to-serial to sub-pixel dots on the display.

The general operation of display controller can be described in reference to FIGURE 6C and the horizontal timing diagram of FIGURE 6E. Consider the CL1 pulse for Line 240. At the depicted instance of time, Line 240 is being loaded into the secondary buffer and will be displayed. While Line 240 is being displayed, dots for the next line are being shifted into the shift register via CL2. On the next CL1 pulse, dots stored in the shift register will be loaded into the secondary buffer. Since FRM is active on the falling edge of CL1, the row driver will display these dots on line 1 of the display. FRM insures that line 1 of the frame buffer is synchronized with line 1 of the display.

[00118] As illustrated by the horizontal timing diagram of FIGURE 6D, for this particular resolution display, there must be

(320/interface\_width) CL2 pulses - for monochrome displays, and ((320\*3)/interface\_width) CL2 pulses - for color displays

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

during one line time. Again, this is due to the fact that each bit of the data bus contains a "dot" to display on the screen. The following illustrates the number of pulses per line for a particular interface\_width using the 320x240 display as an example:

Data Width # CL2 pulses per line

- 1 320
- 2 160
- 4 80
- 8 40 (monochrome); 3\*40 = 120 (color)

[00119] The generic equation for any LCD panels line resolution would be: (#dots\_per\_line/ Interface\_width) CL2 pulses - for monochrome displays, and

((#dots\_per\_line \*3)Interface\_width) CL2 pulses - for color displays

[00120] Note in the horizontal timing diagram of FIGURE 6D that there is dead time on the CL2 clock after the last dots are clocked in by CL2 of a previous line and before CL1 latches those data into the secondary buffer. There is also dead time on the CL2 clock after CL1 latches the data of a previous line and before CL2 clocks the first dots of a next line. This dead time is to ensure timing requirements for the delay from the falling edge of CL2 to the falling edge of CL1 when latching the last dots from a previous line into the secondary buffer. The dead time is also required to meet the timing

WSM Docket No.

requirements for the delay from the failing edge of CL1 to the falling edge of CL2 to ensure that the shift register contents are transferred to the secondary buffer so that the first dots of a new line can be cleanly clocked in. There is a delay from the falling edge of CL1 to the transition of MCLK. This delay is typically +-100 ns and should easily be satisfied at the pins.

[00121] LCD Panels usually have a frame refresh frequency between 60 Hz and 85 Hz. Consider the 320x240 display example with a desired frame refresh rate of 80 Hz. The line frequency is calculated as follows:

Line(f) = frame\_refresh\_freq\* #\_dots\_per\_line = 80 Hz\* 320 = 25.6 kHz(monochrome display)

Line(f) = frame\_refresh\_freq'\*#\_dots\_per\_line\* 3 = 80 Hz\*
960 = 76.8 kHz (color display)

Pixel frequency for a single dot is calculated as follows:

pixclk(f) = Line(f)\* #\_lines\_per\_frame = 25.6 Khz\* 240 = 6.144 MHz (monochrome display)

pixclk(f) = Line(f) \* #\_lines\_per\_frame = 76.8 Khz\* 240 = 18.432 MHz (color display)

Each dot on the display may be represented by multiple bits in the frame buffer (this is called pixel/sub-pixel depth). Therefore, assume in this example that there are 4-bits/pixel or 4-bits/sub-pixel. The AHB bus bandwidth needed to support this display example at 80 Hz with 4 bit/pixel is calculated as follows:

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US BW(MB/s) = pixclk (1/s)'\*(bits/pixel)'\*(1 byte)\* 1/8 (bits) = (6.144 MHz\* 4)/8 = 3.072 MB/s (color)

BW(MB/s) = pixclk (1/s) (bits/pixel) \*3\*(1 byte) \*1/8 (bits) = (6.144 MHz\*)/8 = 9.216MB/s (color)

[00122] From the above equation, the bandwidth required is directly proportional to the frame refresh frequency, the resolution of the display, and the number of bits/pixel. For example, if the refresh frequency and the display resolution remain constant, but the number of bits/pixel required is 2, the bandwidth will be cut in half versus the previous example (1.536 MB/s - for monochrome). Also, the requirement to support a color display is triple the bandwidth versus a monochrome display.

Datapath 604 is shown in further detail in FIGURE 6F and includes a first-in-first-out buffer 606 having a width of 33 bits (32 bits of data and 1 bit of status) and a depth of 16 entries. The FIFO threshold is programmable via register bits FIFOThrsh. The FIFO write and read ports are asynchronous such that the FIFO 606 may be simultaneously written to and read from. Additionally FIFO 606 may be accessed by AHB bus master 601 via the LCD controller registers for test purposes. The FIFO is only accessible in this manner when the LCDEN bit is 0.

[00124] Pixels from the frame buffer serve as the address to a particular location in palette 607. When the pixel size is 1bit, only the least significant 2 locations of the palette are accessed (locations 0-1). When the pixel or sub-pixel

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US size is 2-bits, the least significant 4 locations of the palette are accessed (locations 0-3), and, when the pixel/sub-pixel size is 4-bits, all 16 locations in the palette are accessible. The 4-bit value stored in a palette location addressed by a pixel/sub-pixel is then directed to frame rate modulator 608. Frame rate modulator 608 translates the 4-bit value from the palette to a dot on the display. The output from frame rate modulator 608 is then passed to the RB-swap buffer and swizzler shown at 609, and discussed further below.

Clock generation circuitry 603 is shown in further detail in FIGURE [00125] 6G. The typical operation of clock generation circuitry 603 is illustrated in FIGURE 6H. Internal PixClk ('iPixClk") is generated by dividing the AHBClk by bits AHBClkPreScale 610. In the preferred embodiment, AHBClkPreScale is a 6-bit value and the divisor is from 1 to 64. The divisor must be programmed so that the iPixClk generated adheres to the desired line/frame refresh rate. When LCDEN = "1", PixClk and iPixclk will be generated. When LCDEN = "0", PixClk and iPixClk will be driven to the rail and the LCD controller will be in an idle state. The frequency of the Internal CL2 clock (iCL2) is the determined by [00126] bits PortSize (i.e. the data bus width at the panel interface). Depending on the size of the interface bus width, iCL2 frequency is the PixClk frequency divided by 1, 2, 4, or 8. iCL2 drives the remainder of the core and is especially important for muxing in DataPath Module 604. iCL2 is a free running clock and is not altered like CL2\_OUT which goes to the interface. However, the majority of the datapath logic runs on the PIXCLK clock, to ease synthesis and layout. Where

possible (for example, at the 8-bit last stage output register), the divided PIXCLK signals are used to enable data latching into the output register, which runs on PIXCLK. Minimizing the number of internally-generated clocks dramatically eases the synthesis/layout burden, particularly with regard to meeting hold time.

[00127] As mentioned above, CL2\_OUT is the signal for the LCD interface, and requires special treatment. In this example, the LCD panel bus interface width is 2. Therefore, iCL2 = Pixclk/2. At the end of every line, dots in the LCD panel shift register must be loaded into the panel secondary buffer for display (see FIGURE 6C). The secondary buffer load is accomplished via the falling edge of CL1. To ensure proper timing requirements between the failing edge of CL1 and the falling (previous dot: previous row)/rising (next dot: next row) edge of CL2, dead time is inserted on CL2\_OUT.

[00128] A more detailed block diagram of H&V Timing Generation module 605, shown in further detail in FIGURE 6I. An associated timing diagram is provided in FIGURE 6J. WidthCompare has a granularity of 16 pixels and signals the approach of the end of the display line. In other words, 16 more pixels indicate the end of a line. A 4-bit counter can be implemented to determine when the last pixel occurs. Note, iCL2 is free running and clocking pairs of pixels in DataPath module 604 because the panel interface bus width is 2 (2-dots per CL2 period). When the last pixel occurs, the signal LastDot goes active. At this point iCL1 becomes active and will have a duration of 1 iCL2 clock

I I

1

13

£....

period. At the proper time in relationship to iCL1,as indicated by Figure 6J, CL2 Out will be "0" and resume following iCL2 after 1.5\*iCL2\_period.

[00129] To meet setup and hold time at the interface, the interface signals that have a relation to the falling edge of CL2 at the pin are effectively clocked off the rising edge of iCL2 in the LCD Controller. This is accomplished using iCL2 as a data enable for the output register which is running on PIXCLK, the same clock as the shift register. A four stage pipeline is implemented between the FIFO read port and the first stage of the output shift register to align timing with the datapath and to accommodate a 3-bit staging structure for Red/Blue bit swapping for color panels. Note that the first CL2 clock pulse after CL1 will be delayed for a number of cycles on the first line while the pipeline fills. Once the pipe is full, however, CL2 will run at the maximum possible bandwidth. WidthCompare and LastDot are in the Pixclk domain, while iCL1 is in the iCL2 Domain

[00130] The DOT COUNTER is clocked off PIXCLK in order to eliminate hold time issues with the WidthCompare signal. Depending on the panel data port width (1, 2, 4 or 8 bits), this counter is incremented by 1, 2, 4, or 8 on the same cycle as CL2 rises. When DOT COUNTER bits [9:4] (16-dot granularity) = LineLength, WidthCompare is generated to enable Clock Generation module 603 to count the remaining 16 pixels. LastDot indicates that the last pixel has been counted by the Clock Generation Module 603. LastDot resets DOT COUNTER, thereby enabling pixels for the new line to be counted and compared

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

to LineLength. On the new line, after LastDot resets DOT COUNTER, which does not restart until the appropriate CL2\_OUT/iCL1 dead time has been accounted for, LastDot also turns off WidthCompare so that the pixel counter in Clock Generation module 603 will quit counting pixels (i.e. so that a false LastDot will not be generated).

[00131] The LastDot signal also serves as an indicator to the iCL1 Generation logic. When LastDot goes active, iCL1 will become active and have a duration of 1 iCL2 clock before being deactivated.

[00132] iMCLK transitions off the falling edge of iCL1. Bit ACPreScale defines the number of high-to-low or low-to-high transitions (i.e. iMCLK changes phases after bits ACPreScale have been met).

[00133] The gen\_frmclk signal is used by datapath frame rate modulation logic 609 to increment the modulator counters.

EOFrm (End of Frame) is a signal from Bus Master module 601 and is generated with the 33<sup>rd</sup> bit of data being written into FIFO 606, along with the last doubleword of frame buffer data. Since the FIFO will likely have some locations filled with pixels for the last line, EOFrm is carried through the data pipe in phase with the data for the last line. Depending on the state of bit EOFrmCtl, the internal frame clock iFRM will encompass the last line iCL1 (EOFrmCtl = "1") or the first line iCL1 (EOFrmCtl = "0"). iFRM must be setup/held relative to the falling edge of CL1. Multiple iCL2 clocks are used to form the setup/hold relationship. For the EOFrm-Ctl = "0" case, a 3-state state machine is used to

store the EOFrm state and sense both the last line iCL1 pulse, and the subsequent first line iCL1 pulse, and to generate iFRM at the appropriate time for the first line. If the controller is coming out of a hardware reset state and EOFrmCTL = 0, then iFRM will be generated at the end of the first line of dots sent to the panel, to allow the LCD panel to reset/initialize its row counter.

[00135] EOFrm is in the AHBClk clock domain. By storing it in the FIFO, it is shifted to the PIXCLK domain when read out with the frame buffer data (this is the signal "eofrm\_dword" shown in FIGURE 6E). Eofrm\_dword is synchronized to the iCL2 clock domain before generating iFRM.

[00136] The address generation circuitry of bus master 601 is shown in further detail in FIGURE 6K. For purposes of the present discussion of address generation, an exemplary frame buffer mapping is shown in FIGURE 6L.

[00137] The register value of FBADDR sets the start address for the frame buffer, and is re-loaded at the end of every frame (i.e. FBSize has been satisfied). The granularity of FBADDR is preferably 128-bits. However, DWRD accesses are preferably performed on the AHB Bus when the FIFO threshold is met. This can be accomplished with an accumulator.

[00138] The EOFrm signal is generated by comparing the number of QDWRDs addresses by the Bus Master 601 to bits FBSize. However, there are 4 DWRDs in a QDWRD, therefore, EOFAddrSel (End Of Frame Address Select) can be generated by counting the remaining 4 Bus Master DWRD transactions. When EOFAddrSel is generated, it is held active, indicating the address for the

first DWRD of the frame, until the Bus Master 601 latches the address for use. After the Bus Master 601 latches the address, EOFAddrSel can be de-asserted and 0x4 is added to the previous DWRD address to generate the next DWRD address. ADDRLNC is in terms of DWRD Bus Master transactions and is divided by 4 before being utilized by the QDWRD Counter so that QDWRD Bus Master Transactions can be logged.

[00139] As shown in FIGURE 6L, pixels are preferably mapped Little Endian style. Pixels are stored linearly in memory, with no address gaps from the end of one line to the beginning of the next. "RGB" sub-pixel components are also defined in the FIGURE 6L.

[00140] With respect to Data Path 604, FIFO 606 is written to by AHB Bus Master 601 with AHB Data and EOFrm. The request is made to Bus master 601 by signal FIFOThrshMet (FIGURE 6A) indicating that the FIFO threshold has been met. The FIFO threshold is determined by register bits FIFOThrsh. AHB Bus Master 601 fills the FIFO until it is full. Bus FIFOWrCtls (FIGURE 6A) controls writing to the FIFO via the AHB Bus Master in the AHBCIk domain.

[00141] Returning to FIGURE 6F, FIFO reads are a function of number of bits/pixels required by the datapath (GSMD) in the PixClk clock domain. A 5 bit counter and associated decode may be used to determine FIFO reads as follows:

- (1) Decode all 5-bits of the counter. All 5-bits used by 32:1 mux 610a for pixel select. 16:1 and 8:1 muxes 610 b,c disabled to conserve power.
- (2) Decode 4 LSBs of the counter. Four LSBs used by 16:1 mux 610 b for pixel select. The upper bit of the counter should not be allowed to toggle to conserve power. 32:1 and 8:1 610 a,c muxes disabled to conserve power.
- (3) Decode-3 LSBs of the counter. Three LSBs used by 8:1 mux for pixel select. The 2 upper bits of the counter should not be allowed to toggle to conserve power. 32:1 and 16:1 muxes 610a,b disabled to conserve power.
- [00142] In addition, the 5-bit counter is reset for the first pixel of every line to account for the CL1/CL2 dead time.
- The output of datapath 32:1, 16:1 or 8:1 muxes 610a,c serves as a 4-bit address to the palette (a pixel at a time). Which 4-bit output addresses the palette is determined by a 3:1 mux whose select is register bits GSMD. Gray scaling is enabled for all bit-per-pixel modes. Note that the data size out of 32:1 mux 610a is 1-bit and out of 16:1 601b mux is 2-bits. These bits are the LSBs of the palette address. For 1 bit-per-pixel mode, "000b" is appended to the LSB and for 2 bit-per-pixel mode, "000b" is appended to the two LSBs to form the 4-bit address required by the palette.

[00144] The frame rate modulator, which is shown in further detail in FIGURE 6M, receives, a pixel at a time, the 4-bit palette data accessed by the 4-bit pixel data address. The frame rate modulator converts the 4-bit palette data into a dot for display depending on the value of the palette data.

[00145] Frame rate modulation is a technique used by LCD controllers to utilize the slow response time of the liquid crystal to produce gray shades. This method varies the duty cycle of the LCD pixel in time over multiple frames. While this will produce gray shades, an unacceptable side effect is frame rate flicker. This effect can be minimized by applying a spatial distribution to the modulation pattern in the x and y directions.

[00146] To produce 16 shades of gray requires a minimum frame rate of ~90 hz. This allows a minimum modulation rate of ~10 Hz on a typical monochrome panel with a response time of 250-300 ms. Care must taken in choosing the modulation frame rate because over time the AC value on each pixel must be zero DC. DC build up can occur because the modulation pattern and the AC bias signal (MCLK) interact. Given these restrictions the following 16 frame duty cycles preferably are used:

[00147] Frame Duty Cycle:

[00148] 0, 1/9, 1/5, 4/15, 3/9, 2/5, 4/9, ½, 5/9, 3/5, 6/9, 11/15, 4/5, 8/9, 1.

[00149] This method of gray scale generation can produce varying levels of quality on different panels. Therefore a programmable pattern generator will be employed to manage these panel differences.

[00150] A typical generator 611 in FIGURE 6M consists of a modulo counter, pattern register and a parallel to serial generator, as shown in FIGURE 6N . A pair of modulo counters 612 generates an address to pattern register 613 every 8 pixel times (pixclks). In order to maintain a spatial pattern in x, y and frame to frame, two modulo counters are used. A vertical counter maintains the frame to frame shift and a horizontal counter will maintain the line to line shift. The following pseudocode snippet shows their relationship.

43

```
// modulation count
              MODULO_X = 5;
parameter
                                         // frame vertical sync
              FRM VS;
input
                                         // frame horiz sync
              FRM_HS;
input
                                         // pixel clock
              PIXEL CLK;
input
                                         // next pattern reg address
              NEXT PAT ADDR;
reg [3:0]
                                         // current pattern address
              PAT_ADDR;
reg [3:0]
              NEXT_VERT_ADDR;
                                         // next horizontal start address
reg [3:0]
                                         // current horizontal address
              VERT ADDR;
reg [3:0]
                                         // next horizontal start address
              NEXT_HORIZ_ADDR;
reg [3:0]
                                         // current horizontal start address
              HORIZ ADDR;
reg [3:0]
                                         // pixel position modulo 8
              bitpos
reg [2:0]
if (FRM VS) //(end of frame)
begin
if (VERT_ADDR == MODULO_X-1 ) NEXT_VERT_ADDR= 0;
              NEXT_VERT_ADDR = VERT_ADDR + 1;
else
```

WSM Docket No.

2836- P139US

shade and contains enough bits to map a 320 x 240 screen into smaller manageable pieces. The intent is to modulate small sections of the screen at different phasing to minimize the area the eye integrates. Simply put, the smaller the area, the less likely flicker will be perceived. The length is determined by defining a common multiple of the modulo count and 8. For example if the modulo is 5, the length of the pattern register will be 40 (5 \* 8) bits. Choosing a multiple of 8 greatly simplifies the logic needed to obtain the pixel and frame phasing of pixels.

[00152] 8:1 mux 614 functions as a parallel to serial converter for each of the generated 8 bit modulation patterns. Only 7 generators are needed to produce 16 gray levels since the gray scale pattern and its complement are valid shades. Therefore, the preferred embodiment incorporate modulo 2, 5 (2 instances), 9 (3 instances) and 15 generators.

[00153] The swap, swizzle and collection buffer portions of datapath block 609 are shown in FIGURE 60. Dot data is collected in a shift register 615 at the PixClk rate and collected at a last stage buffer 616 at the iCL2 rate before being sent to the pins. Along the way, the red and blue sub-dot data can be swapped and/or the dot data at the pins can be swizzled in block 617, as discussed below.

[00154] In order to support Red/Blue dot swapping for all panel interface widths, a dual 3-stage ping-pong staging buffer 618 is used to queue up the 3

color bits prior to swapping the red and blue bits. The concept of RB swapping is shown in FIGURE 6P.

[00155] Red/Blue Sub-Dot data from the modulator may be swapped depending on the state of bits SubDotPortSwap. Then, the dot data is collected in a shift register buffer at the PixClk rate and sent to the pins at the iCL2 rate. Again, iC12 reflects the rate required for a particular LCD interface bus width as determined by bits PortSize. After the data is collected in the buffer, bit DotPortSwiz may determine dot swizzling at the interface.

[00156] RB swap staging buffer 618, shown in further detail in FIGURE 6Q, consists of two three-stage shifters (RGB shifters) 619 a,b in parallel and a modulo 3 counter 620. Prior to sending the pixel data to the 8-bit shift register, three bits at a time are stored in one RGB shifter 619 or the other. While one RGB shifter is filling with data, the other is being shifted into the 8-bit output staging shift register, albeit with the red and blue bits reversed, hence the ping-pong technique. On each count cycle of modulo 3 counter 620, the logic switches between one RGB shifter 619 a,b and the other (i.e. while one is filling, the other is being "drained"). If RB swap is disabled, only one of the RGB shifters 619 a,b is used (rgb0), and no RB swap muxes are enabled, so the data entering the RB swap logic is the same as what exits. In any case, the pipeline remains fixed at the same length, simplifying the control logic.

[00157] A 8-bit data swizzle is illustrated in FIGURE 6R. For a 4-bit interface, only bits [3:0] of the shift register are swizzled, and for the 2-bit interface, only bits [1:0] of the shift reg are swizzled.

[00158] To prevent latch-up or DC operation of the panel the power on/off sequence illustrated in FIGURE 6S is required. The power-on programming sequence for LCD controller 110 is as follows:

- 1) At power on, VDD will transition from GND to VDD.
- 2) Set bits GPIO Mux Selector Register for the bus width of interest. The reset state of the LCD interface signals (FRM, MCLK, CL1, CL2 and data will be 1s). Set the appropriate GPIO pins corresponding to FRM, MCLK, CL1, CL2, and Data to direction = output. At this point, since the pin enable mode is set and bit LCDEN has not yet been programmed, the LCD "input signals" will transition from GND to VDD.
- 3) Program the GPIO direction bits to output for the GPIO pins that control the panel LCD Enable & VEE pin. Since the GPIO data is 0s at Reset, the panel's LCD Enable pin will be a GND.
- 4) Set the GPIO data bit associated with turning VEE on.
- 5) Set the GPIO data bit associated with turning on the panel's LCD Enable pin.

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US 6) Set bit LCDEN to allow operation of the internal LCD controller.

If an LCD panel has an on-board LCD controller with a standard interface, it is the responsibility of the on-board IC to meet power-on/off requirements of the panel.

[00159] The preferred power-off sequence for LCD controller 110 is as follows:

- 1) Reset the GPIO data bit associated with turning on the panel's LCD Enable pin.
- 2) Reset the GPIO data bit associated with turning VEE on.
- 3) Reset bit LCDEN so that the internal LCD Controller is idle.
- 4) Reset GPIO Mux Selector Register to "00" (normal GPIO operation) GPIO data will now be present at the pins. At this point, the GPIO data bits associated with FRM, MCLK, CL1, CL2 and Data should still be at 0s the default value.

[00160] AHBCIk is the source of all timing for the AHB interface in the LCD controller. The data path (from the FIFO read port to the panel data port) can run on either the AHBcIk or clk\_Lcd, which is derived from the USB PLL. AHBCIk is generated from separate a PLL. The LCD controller should therefore not be enabled until the PLLs are locked. For the case of an audio sample rate

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US change when the LCD controller is enabled, the AHBCIk PLL N/M dividers may be changed (sample clock is the REFCLK for the PLL). In this case, the PLL must be re-locked and the refresh rate of the LCD display will be affected as the PLL locks - refresh rate will be gradually higher until locking completes. Turning off the display is not feasible. So the ability to run the panel interface off of the USB PLL, which is not variable like the AHBCIk PLL, has been added. The FIFO logic is designed to accommodate asynchronous write and read clocks.

[00161] As shown in additional detail in FIGURE 7A, DMA block 106 includes 2 separate DMA channels 701 and 702, a 2-way Arbiter 703, a shared AHB bus master 704, and a shared AHB register slave 705. Each DMA channel 701 / 702 receives 4-bit DMA requests. The requests are issued from system resources such as USB port 114. Each DMA channel can be used independently or dedicated to any request signal. For purposes of the discussion below, the DMA configuration and control registers are provided in Tables 31-43.

[00162] AHB bus 103 is based on pipe-lined address and data architecture, therefore DMA transfer operations generally proceed as follows. When enabled, the given DMA channel 701/702 performs an internal request which generates an AHB bus request. When the request is granted, the appropriate DMA channel signals are routed based on internal 2-way arbiter 703 and the selected channel begins the transfer with the source location address driven on the bus during the previous data cycle. During all transfers, the individual channel

asserts an internal channel lock signal to lock DMA arbiter 703 to the current channel so that the active DMA channel can complete the transfer without interruption. Timeouts are used to avoid starvation, and to allow higher priority masters to assume control of AHB bus 103.

[00163] Source and destination addressing for each DMA channel can be independently programmed to increment, decrement, or stay at the same value. Generally, 32-bit source and destination address pointers in register define the DMA transfer configuration and are incremented or decremented based on the control bit configuration set in register for each channel. If the increment and decrement bits are the same value, the associated address remains the same. This configuration is used for transfers to/from I/O ports. When performing a DMA transfer of a specific length, a transfer count value of up to one less than 64K transfers is also set in register.

[00164] Unsynchronized transfers are initiated by software configuration of register bits and occur whenever the DMA channel is granted access to the bus. Synchronized transfers are DMA channel controlled by DMA requests from various resources, such as serial channel transmit or receive buffers.

[00165] Arbiter 703 follows the AMBA bus protocol to grant the bus access permission when simultaneous bus access requests are issued by different bus masters on main AHB bus 103. Again, there are total four AMBA bus masters in the System 100, and their bus access priority highest to the lowest as follows: (1)

TIC 108; (2) display interface 110; (3) DMA controller 106; and (4) Local/Main AHB Interface 105.

[00166] The preferred configuration of he DMA engine and its operation can now be described in particular detail. A selected one of the DMA channels is shown in FIGURE 7B for reference.

[00167] A 32-bit source address pointer in DMASRCx (x=1,2) register 706 and a 32-bit destination address pointer in DMADESTx register 707 are provided for DMA transfer configuration. These addresses are incremented or decremented based on the DMACONTx.SINC/SDEC and DMACONTx.DINC/DDEC control bit configuration for the given channel. If the increment and decrement bits are the same value, the associated address remains the same. This configuration is used for transfers to/from I/O ports. The address counters preferably increment as a little-endian address.

[00168] When performing a DMA transfer of a specific length, a transfer count value must be provided in DMATCx register 708. This value may be up to one less than 64K transfers which provides the maximum block size of 64K x 32bit. In the preferred embodiment 32-bit-word transfers are used.

[00169] In addition, if the DMACONTx.INTEN control bit is set, an interrupt is generated when the entire block transfer is done. The DMACONTx.INT bit is used to set, clear, and read status for this interrupt.

[00170] The DMACONTx.ENABLE bits are enables for each of the channels. During an unsynchronized transfer, setting the DMACONTx.ENABLE

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

bit starts the transfer. Clearing the DMACONTx.ENABLE bit stops the transfer. The DMACONTx.ENABLE bit will also be automatically cleared when the transfer count reaches zero. During a transfer, when the DMACONTx.ENABLE bit is set, the DMA channel will transfer data when the request line to the DMA module is active and the specific DMA channel is granted by the internal channel arbiter.

[00171] Since there are two independent channels in the DMA, an arbitration scheme is provided when both channels are enabled. The preferred scheme implemented in the DMA is as follows: (1) First-come-first-service (whichever is enabled first, will start transfer first); and (2) If Channel 1 and Channel 2 are enabled at the same time, Channel 1 starts first. A TIMEOUT register is provided for each channel (TIMEOUTx). After finishing TIMEOUTx number of transfers, the channel arbiter will grant the permission to the other channel.

[00172] Since DMA operations typically involve a large block of transfers, it is possible that the DMA engine will occupy the bus for a long period of time and thereby prevent a lower-priority bus master from gaining bus access permission.

A TIMEOUTG register is therefore also defined such that after TIMEOUTG number of transfers are performed, the bus permission is dropped for one cycle to create a window of one cycle within which a lower-priority bus master may be able to perform some bus access instead of being completely starved.

[00173] Arbiter 109 follows the AMBA bus protocol to grant the bus access permission to the proper bus master when simultaneous bus access requests are issued by different bus masters on the main AHB bus.

[00174] As previously indicated, there are total four AMBA bus masters in the Maverick, and there bus access priority from the highest to the lowest is listed in the Table 44.

external SRAM/Flash Memory Controller (SMC) 107 supports eight external memory blocks, each having an address space up to 64 M Bytes. In the preferred embodiment of system 100, 4 SRAMs blocks are used, each with 1 M-byte address space, along with one block of FLASH RAM, as shown in FIGURE 8. Each Bank has its own configuration register with which programmers can configure the Bank to support a specific type of External memory. In FIGURE 8, the banks designated BANK 0-3 comprise 16-bit external SRAMs and the bank designated BANK4 comprises 8-bit wide external Flash RAMs.

[00176] FIGURE 8 is a diagram of the address space supported by static memory controller (SMC) 107. In the preferred embodiment, the address space is partitioned into 8 blocks out of which the first five blocks are used. These blocks can be 8-bit or 16-bit SRAMs with the MW bit in register set to 01(16-bit) or 00(8-bit). The interface nXWEN and nXOEN are connected to the memory WRn and RDn pins respectively, the nXCS(3:0] to the memory, CSn\_ou[3:0] pins, the XADDR[19:0] to the memory AD[19:0] pins, nXBLS[1:0] to DQMn[1:0]

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

pins, XDATAOUT[15:0] are connected to DA\_out[15:0] signals. XDATAIN[15:0] are connected to DA\_in[15:0] signals. XDATAIN[31:16] are tied to 0. SMC's -(nXDATAEN[1:0]) are connected to DA\_en[1:0] signals.

DA-out, DA-in and DA\_en respectively couple to the chip pads to create DA[15:0], DA\_en[1:0] being the pad enable signals for individual bytes. All the signals and pins except DA, DA-in, DA\_out, DA\_en, and AD are active negative, and the control pins remain disabled if access to any other Block is performed. Connections to external SRAM should be made as specified in SMC: controls of the SMCBCRx registers should be made for 16-bit (or lesser) wide external memory only.

Static Memory Controller (SMC) in interface 107 also partially supports FLASH memory such NAND and NOR 8-bit wide Flash memory modules in Block 4. In the preferred embodiment, a write strobe (CS4WEn pin) and a read strobe (CS40En) are provided. These signals are active low and are connected to SMC's nXBLS[0] and nXOEN, and are disabled if access to any other Block is performed. Additionally, DATA/ADDRESS pins (DAx and ADx) are muxed. Additionally, some GPIO pins can be programmed as Address/ Data latch signal, chip select signal, and any other signals needed for a specific flash memory. SMC Block 4 Control Register (SMCBCR4) is programmed to suit the flash memory functions. Thus SMCBCR4's MW should be set to 00, and RBLE should be set to 0.

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US The Debug 12C interrupt is mapped to DSPintO and has the highest priority. This interrupt is not visible to the ARM. The priority for the DSP interrupts is: DSPintI has a higher priority and DSPint15 has the lowest priority.

[00180] Interrupt controller 126 is an APB peripheral and is configured by Microprocessor 101. All the interrupts in the chip, which are level sensitive, including the DSP interrupts, pass through this block. FIGURE 9 is a more detailed functional block diagram of Interrupt Controller 126 block, which is based on an ARM specified interrupt controller 901.

[00181] The size of the interrupt request space (IRQsize) is 32 in the illustrated implementation. The lower 17 interrupt sources (including IRQ1 which is a software programmed interrupt) are dedicated to microprocessor 101. There is no hardware priority for the microprocessor 101 IRQs and therefore a software interrupt handler reads the source register in the Microprocessor 101 and prioritizes the asserted interrupts. The FIQ (Fast Interrupt Request) is generated separately, and is also mapped to the microprocessor 101 space only. Any interrupt microprocessor 101 can be routed as a normal interrupt request via nIRQ or as a fast interrupt request via nFIQ.

[00182] The 15 DIRQs (interrupt request sources for the DSP) are mapped to the higher is IRQs. All the DSP interrupts can be generated by software by setting bits in register. DIRQs can be individually gated off to the microprocessor 101 by setting the microprocessor – DSP mask register 902 and

masked off from the DSP by setting the DSP in mask register 902. The Register definitions are provided for the preferred embodiment in Tables 46-51.

integrating Analog to Digital converter(ADC) with a resolution of 8 bits and a nominal sampling rate of 100Hz. A block diagram is provided as FIGURE 10A along with an exemplary work flow in FIGURE 10B. The input to the ADC comes from a 2:1 analog mux 1001 selecting either the battery voltage or the volume input voltage, under microprocessor control. The output data register 1002 is a 32-bit register which shows the value of the current sample in counter 1007, with the higher 24 bits set to zero. Output register 1002 is updated at each sample period and an interrupt to the microprocessor is generated when the data is ready. Dual-Slope integration and A/D conversion is based on a conventional integrator 1005 and comparator 1004. Enablement, configuration and status data are implemented by configuration/ status register 1003 within the Microprocessor 101 space under control of logic 1008. The ADC control registers are provided for the illustrated embodiment in Tables 52-54.

[00184] System 100 has two identical PLLs 121a,b on-chip which generate all needed clock frequencies for operating the processors, setting the audio sample rate and clocking the peripherals. A block diagram of the system clock generation scheme is illustrated in FIGURE 11A.

[00185] Both PLLs 121a,b use the on-chip 32.768KHz oscillator 120 as reference clock. Each PLL 121a,b includes a calibration circuit 1101 which can

set the bias current to the corresponding VCO 1102a,b to account changes in working environment such as temperature and supply voltage.

[00186] Preferably, the first PLL (PLL1) is used to generate the oversampled audio frequency (AudClk), the system clock SYSCLK, and the UART clock using dividers 1103a,c set with divisors D1, H1, and G1. SYSCLK is further divided down by system clock dividers 1104 to generate the base clocks HCLK (high-speed bus clock), MCLK microprocessor (ARM) clock, PCLK (peripheral clock) and the DSPCLK DSP clock. The second PLL (PLL2) is used to generate the USB clock and a backup UART clock. PLL2 is associated with dividers 1105a,b which generate these clocks by dividing-down by the PLL outputs by factors G2 and D2. Prescalers 1106 a,b support division of the reference clock by the values M1 and M2 prior to the inputs of PLLs 121a,b, respectively.

[00187] FIGURE 11B shows clock control block 112 in further detail. The Tables 55-57 show the supporting frequencies and corresponding configurations of these two PLLs.

[00188] Clock control block 112 contains the registers required to set the divisors and other operational parameters for the PLLs. Tables 58-65 list the preferred register set for configuring clock control block 112.

[00189] Generally, clock generation is performed as follows: The reference clock source is selected by the REF 1 field in the clock control register!

(CMCTL1) as well as a hardware boot-up mode. The reference clock is divided

57

by the 4-bit M1 value and input to phase-frequency detector 1110a (FIGURE 11B). The other input to the phase-frequency detector is the divided version of the master clock. The output of the phase-frequency detector (PD) 1110a controls the output frequency of the VC01.

[00190] The output frequency range of the VC01 is 100 MHz to 200 MHz across process and temperature, controlled by the VC0EN1 and VC0B1 fields in the clock control register. These two control fields are used together when configuring and locking PLL1. Clearing the VC0EN1 bit fixes the VC0 control voltage to its nominal value and causes VC01 to output its nominal clock frequency (approximately 150 MHz). When the VC0EN1 bit is clear, the phase detector (PD) 1110a output has no effect on the VC01 output frequency. The VC0B1 field is a 6-bit value that controls the bias current to the VC01. The VC0B1 value can be adjusted to control the nominal frequency of the VC01.

[00191] Upon reset, VC01 runs at its nominal frequency. VC0EN1 is cleared, and the D1, DSPDIV, PON, MDIV, and HDIV dividers are set to their default values giving an open-loop DSPCLK, MCLK, HCLK, PCLK of 6 MHz - 14 MHz.

[00192] The master clock (VC01 output divided by SYSDIV) is divided down to generate the DSP clock (DSPCLK), the audio over-sample clock (AUDCLK), and the feedback clock to the phase detector (PD) controlling the VCO. Specifically, the master clock is divided by the DSPDIV value to generate the DSP clock and by the D1 to generate the audio clock, which is used to

synchronize the audio input and output blocks. The audio clock is typically in the range of 8 MHz to 24 MHz. Additionally, the reference clock selected can be routed to the audio clock port for observation when the REFCLKBP bit is set. The master clock is further divided by the 12-bit N1 value to generate the feedback clock for PLL1. Similarly, the master clock is divided down to generate microprocessor 101 clock (MCLK) and AHB/APB clocks.

PLL2 generates the USB clock by locking a reference clock to a [00193] divided down version of the USB clock. Typically, the reference clock is input from the 32.768KHz crystal oscillator, but another possibility is to derive the USB clock from the externally supplied clock used for test/debug. The reference clock source is selected by the REF2 field in the clock control register 2 (CMCTL2). The reference clock is divided by the 4-bit M2 value and input to the phase-frequency detector (PD) 1110b. The other input to the phase-frequency detector is the divided version of the master clock. The output of the phase-frequency detector 1110b controls the output frequency of the VC02. The output frequency range of the VC02 is 70 MHz to 130 MHz [00194] across process and temperature, controlled by the VCOEN2 and VCOB2 fields in the Clock Control Register2. These two control fields are used together when configuring and locking PLL2. Clearing the VCOEN2 bit fixes the VC02 control voltage to its nominal value and causes the VCO to output its nominal clock

frequency (approximately 100 MHz). When the VCOEN2 bit is clear, the

phase-frequency detector 1110b output has no effect on the VCO output

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US frequency. The VC0E2 field is a 6-bit value that controls the bias current to the VCO. The VCOE2 value can be adjusted to control the nominal frequency of the VCO. After hardware power-on reset, VC02 is in power-down mode for power saving purpose.

[00195] PLLs internal VCOs 121 a,b require a low pass filter network to be connected from the LPFLT pin to GNDA which is sufficient for all allowable reference input frequencies. PLLs 121 a,b also require a filter network from the TPFLT pin to VDDA. It must be stressed that the best analog performance can be achieved by placing the capacitor as close as possible to the FLT pins and that the proper layout precautions be taken to avoid noise coupling.

[00196] The TCM 1 and TCM2 bits-in the CMCTL register enables the clock manager test mode. This mode drives the dividers with the EXT clock instead of the VCO outputs. This gives controlled test visibility of the divider chains.

[00197] In order to reduce VCO gain tolerances, a VCO bias current calibration circuit 1108 a,b (FIGURE 11B) is included to compensate for process variations in the bias circuitry. The bias calibration is performed before enabling VCOs 121 a,b in order to obtain the correct operation bias current. The bias calibration is automatic, but can also be controlled manually if necessary.

[00198] VCO calibration is enabled by writing a one to the corresponding bias lock enable bit (BLEN1/2) register after configuring the PLL registers for a given sample rate and reference clock. The VCOB1 field is reset to 0x1c (near

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

the middle of its range) and the VC0B2 reset to 0x11. The calibration circuitry searches for the optimum VCO bias value. Upon completion, the VCO bias lock (VBLOCK1/2) flag is cleared, signifying that the bias value is "locked".

[00199] Alternatively, the VCO bias calibration can be performed under software control if the BLEN1/2 bit is cleared. Microprocessor 101 can write values to the VCOB1/2 fields and monitor the HI/LO flags to determine if the VCO output frequency is higher or lower than desired.

[00200] The VCO bias calibration sequence is not reversible in the automatic calibration mode. In another word, once the VCOB1/2 value is locked by the calibration circuitry, it can not be modified unless the calibration circuitry is reset by toggling VBLOCK\_RST bit.

[00201] PLL lock detection circuitry 1107 a,b is utilized to continuously monitor PLLs 121 a,b and report the status. Each block 1107 a,b circuitry is comprised of a Frequency Lock Detector (FIGURE 11D) and Phase Lock Detector (FIGURE 11C). Each one or both of these detectors can be enabled to determine the PLL locked/unlocked condition. When a PLL is locked, the corresponding LOCK flag will go low. If a PLL loses lock, the corresponding LOCK flag will be set. Meanwhile a low-to-high transition of the LOCK will cause an interrupt if the lock interrupt enable bit (LKIEN) is set.

[00202] The output of the phase detectors 1110a,b indicates the phase difference between the divided incoming reference clock and the divided feedback VCO clock. When the given PLL is locked, the phase difference is

minimal. The programmer is able to define the range of the phase difference which is considered as out-of-lock situation by-programming bits PHASE-LOCK-DS in the CMCFG register. To enable the Phase Lock Detector to be part of the LOCK generation, bit PHASE\_LOCK\_EN is programmed in the CMCFG register.

The outputs of M and N divider are fed into a frequency comparator 1109 a,b. The programmer has the ability to define the variation beyond which two frequencies are considered mismatched via bits FREQ\_LOCK\_DS in the CMCFG register. Meanwhile, hysteresis is built in for indicating PLL in-lock and out-of-lock situations through bits HYST\_F INLOCK and HYST\_F\_OUTLOCK in the CMCFG register. The Frequency Lock detector can be part of the LOCK generation bit FREQ\_LOCK\_EN in the CMCFG register is programmed appropriately.

[00204] SSI Interface 118 performs two primary functions, namely that of an SSI configuration interface that activates on chip startup, and that of a general purpose serial interface for operating either SSI devices or similar 2 and 3 wire serial devices.

[00205] The preferred implementation allows connection to an external serial EEPROM containing power-up configuration information (FIGURE 12A), as may be required for a given system configuration. After a hardware reset, a state machine attempts to load the configuration data, and if present, the first 40 bytes of configuration data are transferred to a set of on-chip configuration

registers. If the EEPROM device is not present, or the header is invalid, the Configuration Registers are left in their previous state. The EEPROM device is accessible to the host processor by reading/writing to control registers.

62

In the preferred embodiment, the only time when the system 100 accesses the EEPROM is after a hardware reset; the system 100 can only read EEPROM devices - it cannot write them unassisted. Writing to EEPROM can be accomplished through a configuration interface register accessible from the microprocessor 101 processor. The timing of the data and clock signals for the initialization load are generated by a hardware state machine. The minimum timing relationship between the clock and data is shown in FIGURE 12B. The state of the data line can change only when the clock line (CLOCK) is low. A state change of the data line during the time that the clock line is high is used to indicate start and stop conditions.

[00207] The EEPROM device read access sequence is shown in FIGURE 12C. The timing generally follows that of a random read sequence. System 100 first performs a dummy write operation, generating a start condition followed by the slave device address and an byte address of zero. The slave address is made up of a device identifier (0xA) and a bank select bits (A2-A0). The bank select bits select among eight 256 byte blocks which may be within a single device, i.e. a 1KB memory may be comprised of a single 1KB EEPROM with four 256 byte banks. System 100 always begins access at byte address zero and

continues accessing one byte at a time. The byte address automatically increments by one until a stop condition is detected.

[00208] The SSI register interface is illustrated in Tables 66-69.

[00209] The SSI register interface consists of a data register and a configuration interface register(CFGI). The data register is used to read or write the interface signal states. The CFGI contains the control bits for host software-based control if signal direction, output driver type, and status bits for the EEPROM controller.

[00210] Software access to the EEPROM is provided by the Data Interface Register and Configuration Interface Register. By controlling the data and direction bits, the external signal pins can be driven with the desired protocol and timing. The timing of the clock and data signals is completely determined by host-based software and should meet the timing requirements as shown previously.

[00211] Software access to other serial devices can be accomplished in a similar manner. If the EECLK and EEDATA signal are shared between an SSI device and a non-SSI device, extra care must be taken to ensure the protocol used does not disturbe the unintended device. The SSI interface specification provides reserved addresses to allow sharing with non-12C devices.

[00212] The Memory Data Format for the EEPROM configuration is shown in Table 70, where the Byte Offset is the address within the EEPROM device.

[00213] In the general purpose control interface mode, the SSI interface can be used for general purpose I/O. Each pin is controllable as an input or an output, and under software control, can implement various of serial interfaces. For example, interface 118 could be configured to communicate with external power control devices, such as those used to control Flash EEROM programming voltage, and the PCMCIA interface operating voltage.

[00214] USB port 114 in the illustrated embodiment complies USB Specification Revision 1.1, as shown in further detail in FIGURES 13A and 13B. Its primary purpose is to down-load and/or up-load music files from a host PC with Internet access. This USB device port generally is self-powered and supports 64-byte/packet bulk-in and bulk-out modes, as well as vendor/class custom commands. Since the device uses Bulk transfers, it is a Full Speed Device (12MBps).

[00215] A USB Device Controller (UDC) 1301 interfaces with an external USB compliant device through transceiver 1302 and with main bus 103 through UDC bus application 1303 and USB - AHB bridge 1304. Bridge 1304 is configured using dedicated control and configuration registers and spans buses 103 and 1303. A pair of FIFOs 1307a,b and associated state machine 1308 support bulk transfers, where one FIFO can hold a packet of data while the other is exchanging data with the microprocessor.

[00216] USB port 114 can operate in either Configuration 0, where the control endpoint is for standard commands or Configuration 1, where the control

endpoint is for Vendor/Class commands. String Descriptor Control Logic 1310 decodes string commands in the standard configuration. Vendor/Class commands are not decoded, but instead are stored and an interrupt sent to microprocessor 101 by Vendor/Class Control Logic. Subsequently, microprocessor 101, under software control, decodes Vendor/Class commands.

For Bulk IN and Bulk OUT transfers, USB port 114 has two 16x32bit FIFOs 1307 a,b (FIFOO and FIF01). Each FIFO is bidirectional, although, as mentioned above, the pair of FIFOs only operates in one direction at a time. Each FIFO 1307 a,b holds a wMaxPacketSize of 64 bytes, although a transfer can be less than 64 bytes. A bulk transfer is complete when an endpoint (host or device) performs one of the following: 1) Has transferred exactly the amount of data expected, and 2) Transfers a packet with a payload size less than wMaxPacketSize or transfers a zero-length packet.

[00218] To keep track of how many valid bytes are in each FIFO 1307a,b, a TOTLCNT register is provided for each FIFO. For Bulk IN transfers, microprocessor 101 writes to these registers. For Bulk OUT transfers the TOTLCNT registers are written to by the USB-APB bridge 1304. In the case where microprocessor 101 fills both FIFOs for a Bulk IN transfer, FIFOSTRT bit indicates to bridge 1304 which FIFO to read first.

[00219] On the UDC Application Bus 1303, FIFOs 1307 a,b are drained and filled one byte at a time in little endian byte order. Therefore, microprocessor 101 must write/read the bytes in the 32-bit words in the FIFO in

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

the same manner. As mentioned above, the TOTLCNT register indicates how many bytes in the FIFO are valid.

[00220] FIFOs 1307 a,b are time-sharing in the data transfer mode. During a Bulk OUT transfer, when one FIFO is holding one packet of data and waiting for microprocessor 101 to drain that FIFO or microprocessor 101 is currently draining that FIFO, the other FIFO can continue to receive data. When USB-APB 1304 bridge has filled a FIFO during a Bulk OUT, it will generate an interrupt to microprocessor 101, which read the FIFOORDY and FIFO1RDY bits to determine which FIFO is full. The bridge will always fill FIFOO first. After microprocessor 101 has begun draining the FIFOs during the Bulk OUT transfer, it must keep track of which FIFO it is to be read next. Preferably, it should start with FIFOO and then ping-pong back and forth until all the Bulk OUTS have completed.

[00221] During a Bulk IN transfer, when one FIFO is holding one packet of data and waiting to transmit or is transmitting, microprocessor 101 can fill up the other FIFO with another packet. Whenever microprocessor 101 fills two FIFOs at once, it must write the FIFOSTRT bit to indicate to USB-ABP bridge 1304 which FIFO to start with. The bridge will then ping-pong the FIFOSTRT bit as it reads one FIFO and then the other. When the bridge has drained one FIFO it will interrupt microprocessor 101. Microprocessor 101 can then determine which FIFO to fill by reading the FIFOORDY and FIFO1 RDY bits. If the latency is such that microprocessor 101 will again fill both FIFOs, it must again set the

FIFOSTRT bit. After filling a FIFO, microprocessor 101 writes the TOTLCNT register, as an indication to bridge 1304 that the data in the FIFO is ready to be sent to the UDC.

[00222] The state of each FIFO is also available in the FIFO\_0\_STATE and FIFO\_1\_STATE bits. These are read only registers available for debug and/or to aid microprocessor 101 in determining the state of the FIFOs independent of a Bulk OUT/IN transfer or between interrupt.

[00223] USB device port 114 supports all standard USB commands to endpoint zero (the default endpoint, always present) except the "Set Descriptor and "SynchFrame" commands. The supported standard commands are provided in Table 72 for convenience. All the standard commands are decoded by UDC device 1301 without intervention by microprocessor 101. Even though the UDC will decode all these commands, the SETUP packets are still written to the VC\_SETHI/LO registers whenever a SETUP packet is transmitted. For debug, microprocessor 101 can poll this register to see what SETUP packets are crossing USB.

[00224] USB-APB bridge 1304 supports 6 String Descriptors for the "Get Descriptor (String)" command. Since the length of the string varies according to the application, it is impossible to put the entire contents of the string in the USB block. Thus, single 4-byte STRBUFx Registers are used to buffer the strings. When the USB host issues Get String Descriptor commands, UDC 1301 attempts to read the appropriate STRBUFx register. If the STRBUFx register

does not hold valid data, i.e., the STROKx register is 0, the bridge will not acknowledge (NAK) the UDC and interrupt microprocessor 101 with the proper STRINTRx interrupt. When the STRBUFx data is sent to the UDC, bridge 1304 will reset the STROKx bit. If microprocessor 101 "knows" how big the string is, it can poll the STROKx bit and then fill the STRBUFx register and set the STROKx bit before another STRINTRx interrupt. Otherwise, the bridge will NAK the Get String Descriptor requests to UDC 1301 while it asserts the STRINTRx interrupt to microprocessor 101. All SETUP packets end up in the VC\_SETHI/LO registers so if microprocessor 101 needs access to Language ID in the WINDEX field this will be in these registers.

[00225] All the port configuration information is stored in the Config Registers which requires proper initialization before USB port is enabled.

[00226] USB-APB bridge 1304 supports Vendor/Class commands by providing endpoint 1. The UDC does not interpret or decode any Vendor/Class commands. It requires intervention software for this function. USB-APB bridge 1304 stores the Vendor/Class command and generates a Vendor/Class command (VC\_INTR) interrupt to microprocessor 100. If the Vendor/Class command is followed by Control IN transactions, microprocessor 101 must supply the proper response in the VC\_INHI/LO registers. If the Vendor/Class command is followed by Control OUT transactions, the data are read by microprocessor 101 from the VC\_OUTHI/LO registers.

[00227] The VC\_SETHI/LO registers are provided to hold the 8-byte SETUP packet from the USB host. The SETUP packet is written into the VC\_SETHI/LO registers in Big Endian byte order.

[00228] The supported configurations of USB port 114 is shown in FIGURE 13B and the corresponding register map in Tables 73- 115.

[00229] In order to decrease power consumption, UDC 1301 is able to detect activity on the USB cable. If there is no activity on the USB cable for 3ms, the UDC will enter SUSPEND mode and USB-APB bridge 1304 will assert the SUSINTR interrupt. Upon detecting the SUSINTR interrupt, microprocessor 101 can shut down the PLL2 which generates the 48 MHz USB clock.

[00230] There are two ways to wake up UDC 1301 when the port is in suspend mode. microprocessor 101 powers up the PLL2. After PLL2 is locked and a stable 48MHz is generated, microprocessor 101 sets the UDCRESUME bit to enable the remote wake-up feature. Alternatively, The UDC detects a resume event on the USB cable and the USB-APB bridge asserts the RESINTR interrupt. Upon detecting the RESINTR interrupt, microprocessor 101 will enable the PLL2 to generate the 48 MHz USB clock.

[00231] USB-APB bridge 1304 is able to generate two classes of interrupts to microprocessor 101. The first is a general interrupt (INTR), the second is the Vendor/Class command interrupt (VC\_INTR). The INTR interrupt is asserted for events covered in the USBINTRCN register. The VC\_INTR interrupt is generated for events covered in the VC\_INTRCN register. Each individual interrupt bit

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

remains set until cleared by microprocessor 101. Each individual interrupt has a corresponding mask bit and each class of interrupt has a global enable bit, USBINTREN and VC\_INTREN, respectively. The mask function is an AND gate, so an interrupt is masked when the corresponding mask bit is cleared (set to 0). Each interrupt mask and the global interrupt enables preferably only masks the assertion of INTR and VC\_INTR. Each interrupt bit will therefore still be set if an interrupt would have otherwise been generated. This allows microprocessor 101 to track interrupts that were generated and masked without having INTR or VC\_INTR asserted.

[00232] The BLKINTR Bulk Transfer Interrupt interrupt is generated during Bulk IN/OUT transfers. Generally, BLKINTR indicates that a FIFO 1307 a,b has been filled by UDC 1301 for a Bulk OUT or that a FIFO has been drained by UDC 1301 for a Bulk IN transfer. To aid microprocessor 101 in determining the state of each FIFO, the internal state bits are provided in the FIFO-0-STATE and FIFO\_1\_STATE registers. To aid in error recovery, each FIFO and its associated state machine can be reset by setting the proper FIFOORST/FIF01RST bit. This bit is not self-resetting and must be set then cleared by microprocessor 101.

[00233] The BLKINTR interrupt is first asserted during a Bulk OUT transfer as soon as the UDC has filled FIFO0. FIFO0 will always be filled first at the beginning of a Bulk OUT transfer. After FIFO0 is filled and the BLKINTR is asserted, the UDC may fill FIF01. Once microprocessor 101 detects BLKINTR it

reads the USBBLKDIR bit to determine direction of the Bulk transfer, and then the FIFOORDY/ FIF01RDY bits to determine which FIFO to drain. Since a packet can be less than 64 bytes, microprocessor 101 also reads the TOTLCWT register to see how much valid data is in the FIFO. As noted, FIFO0 will always fill first so if both FIFO0ORDY and FIFO1RDY are asserted then the interrupt latency is such that the UDC filled both FIFOs before microprocessor 101 could respond, and therefore microprocessor 101 should drain FIFO0.

[00234] Due to the relatively slow nature of the UDC interface (12 Mbs), the time to fill a FIFO 1307a,b will be approximately 48 microseconds. The time between assertion of the BLKINTR and the UDC attempting to fill another FIFO will not be less than 0.4 microseconds. Depending on the latency of microprocessor 101 and the APB bus cycle time, it is reasonable for microprocessor 101 to drain FIFOO before FIF01 is filled. In this case, microprocessor 101 will only be draining FIFOO. USB-APB bridge 1304 always attempts to fill FIFOO if it is empty, FIF01 will only be filled if FIFOO is "full" and another packet is coming from the UDC. Note that "full" simply means that the write into the FIFO has finished and the TOTLCNT register is valid.

[00235] The BLKINTR interrupt is asserted at the beginning of a Bulk IN transfer when UDC 1301 attempts to read a FIFO 1307 a,b and both FIFOs are empty. Microprocessor 101 will then read the USBBLKDIR bit and the FIF00RDY/FIF01RDY bits to determine which FIFO to fill. It is assumed that microprocessor 101 will fill both FIFOs at the start of a Bulk IN transfer.

Microprocessor 101 then sets the FIFOSTRT bit and writes to the appropriate TOTLCNT register. The writing of the TOTLCNT register is an indication to USB-APB bridge 1304 that the FIFO is "full" and the data can be sent to UDC 1301. Each time the bridge finishes draining a FIFO to the UDC, a BLKINTR interrupt is asserted and the appropriate FIFOORDY/FIFOIRDY bit is set. While the bridge is ping-ponging between the FIFOs, it toggles the FIFOSTRT bit. If both FIFOs are allowed to drain and more Bulk data needs to be sent, microprocessor 101 will set the FIFOSTRT bit again.

[00236] Whenever UDC 1301 attempts to read a STRBUFx register and the corresponding STROKx bit is not set, USB-APB bridge 1304 asserts the corresponding STRINTRx interrupt. Since the bridge is not decoding the SETUP packets, it is only the attempt to read STRBUFx by the UDC which causes the interrupt. Notwithstanding, the bridge always stores the SETUP packets in the VC\_SETHI/ LO registers, microprocessor 101 can get the Language ID from the WLNDEX field in VC\_SETLO[31:16].

[00237] Once STRBUFx is read by UDC 1301, the appropriate STROKx bit is cleared by bridge 1304. If microprocessor 101 does not fill the STRBUFx after the STROKx bit is cleared, and simply waits for the next STRINTR interrupt, the UDC request will be NAK'd on the USB cable. If microprocessor 101 "knows" how long the string descriptor is, it can fill STRBUFx after STROKx bit clears and thus keeps "ahead" of the reading of STRBUFx by the UDC.

[00238] The SUSINTR interrupt is asserted when the UDC is entering suspend mode, either under direction of the host or due to 3ms of inactivity on the USB cable. After detecting this interrupt, microprocessor 101 can shut down the PLL generating the 48 MHz clock. While the UDC is in suspend mode, the UDCSUSPEND bit is set. While the UDCSUSPEND bit is set, the SUSINTR bit cannot be cleared. Microprocessor 101 therefore masks the SUSINTR bit by clearing SUSINTMSK and can then either wait for a RESINTR or initiate a remote wakeup.

[00239] To initiate a remote wakeup, microprocessor 101 sets the UDCRESUME bit. Before it sets this bit, microprocessor 101 enables the appropriate PLL and assures that the 48 MHz clock is stable such that the Remote Wakeup Operation to the host is timed correctly. As a side effect of the remote wakeup operation, the RESINTR interrupt is also set after microprocessor 101 sets the UDCRESUME bit. Since microprocessor 101 initiates the remote wakeup operation and the 48 MHz clock is already running, microprocessor 101 simply clears the RESINTR bit after a remote wakeup operation.

[00240] The RESINTR interrupt is asserted while UDC 1301 is in Suspend mode and it detected a resume event over the USB cable. Microprocessor 101 must then restart the PLL generating the 48 MHz USB clock. Since the RESINTR is set sometime after a Suspend, software clears both the RESINTR and the SUSINTR and sets SUSINTMSK

[00241] Vendor/Class command interrupts are asserted whenever the UDC executes a Vendor/Class command SETUP packet and also for the Control IN/OUT following the Vendor/Class command as long as the VCCMDEN bit is set.

[00242] Specifically, the VC\_SETINTR interrupt is asserted whenever UDC 1301 writes a SETUP packet to VC\_SETHI/LO and it expects the application to decode the command. In the preferred embodiment, this will only take place for Vendor/Class commands, but as mentioned earlier, all SETUP packets end up in the VC\_SETHI/LO registers. After microprocessor 101 reads the VC\_SETHI/LO registers it will be expected to respond to the Control IN/OUT following the Vendor/Class command SETUP packet.

[00243] The VC\_ININTR interrupt is asserted when the UDC attempts to read the VC\_INHI/LO registers and microprocessor 101 has not already written to them. If microprocessor 101, as the result of a Vendor/Class command SETUP packet decode, has already written the VC INHI/LO registers and set the VC\_INCNT register, then this interrupt is not generated when the UDC attempts the read the VC\_INHI/LO registers.

The VC OUTINTR interrupt is asserted after the UDC writes the VC\_OUTHI/LO registers and the VC\_OUTCNT register is valid. Microprocessor 101 then reads the VCOUTCNT and VC\_OUTHI/LO registers. After microprocessor 101 has read these registers, it clears the VC\_OUTCNT register by writing back the read value. This is the indication to bridge 1304 that

microprocessor 101 has read the VC\_OUTHI/LO registers and another packet can be received over the USB bus. This also means that after the bridge receives a Vendor/Class command SETUP packet, it will only accept Control OUT packets as long as VC\_OUTCNT is set to OOOOb. Control OUT's received while VC\_OUTCNT is not equal to OOOOb will be NAK'd.

[00245] After a power-on reset, microprocessor 101 initializes the configuration registers in the USB-APB bridge 1304. Before writing the configuration registers, microprocessor 101 sets the USBEN bit to 1 to bring the UDC out of reset.

[00246] Microprocessor 101 then programs the Device, Configuration, Interface, and Endpoint descriptors as required. The UDS configuration registers are listed in Table 116. After the descriptors are programmed, microprocessor 101 can write the UDC configuration information into FIFO0. After all writing the descriptor information, microprocessor 101 sets the ARMCFGRDY bit to a 1. When the bridge has finished initializing the UDC the UDCCFGRDY bit will be set to 1.

[00247] While UDC 1301 and USB-APB 1304 bridge are in operational mode, the ARMCFGRDY/UDCCFGRDY bit pair are set to a value other than 11. Clearing the USBEN bit will reset the UDC and require reprogramming of the UDC configuration registers through FIFO0. Setting the self-clearing BRIDGERST bit will reset all the registers in USB-APB bridge 1304 and require reprogramming of all the bridge configuration registers.

Since the UDC configuration registers are programmed only once after each UDC reset, and these values are not needed by USB-APB bridge 1304, FIFO0 is used to hold the values before writing them to UDC 1301. The values programmed into the UDC are written to FIFO0 in big endian byte order. This contrasts with the use of the FIFOs as Bulk data transfer agents where the data is written into each 32-bit Dword in little endian byte order. The values programmed into FIFO0 are listed in Table 116 "UDC Configuration. Register Values (FIFO0)". These values are concatenated in the order listed, divided into 32bit Dwords, and written to FIFO0. The number of bytes written is 46, so that results in 12 FIFO0 writes with bits [15:01] of the last Dword set to 0.

[00249] Microprocessor 101 includes embedded IEEE standard boundary scan circuitry (JTAG). With the supporting driver software, JTAG allows user to view the microprocessor internal state, set break points from the main application, apply special vectors, among other things.

[00250] DSP debug block 141 in the illustrated embodiment comprises sub-blocks, each of which can monitor the X/Y/P DSP memory address buses, assert an interrupt to microprocessor 101 or DSP 102, or freeze the DSP clock, if freeze is enabled. One of these sub-blocks is shown in FIGURE 14. The register set is set out in Tables 117-122.

[00251] Each debug sub-block has a 1 bit read only "owner" field. When this bit is "0" the owner of this block is Microprocessor 101 and when this bit is "1" the owner is DSP 102. The owner can write to the "Other Wr" field which, if

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US set, allows the other processor to write to the remaining fields of the debug block.

The "Debug En" field is set before the actions of the debug block become effective and is also used to save power when this block is not in use. The "Clk Freeze En" is a 1-bit field which when set at the trigger of a debug event freezes the DSP clock. "Mem" is a 2 bit field which selects memories to be observed for debug event. Start address range and end address range are set, so that when the address is between these ranges an event triggers. The "Hit Count" tracks the number of times a debug event has occurred. Num\_hits\_for\_trigger is the field which sets the number of hits to the address range before the interrupt is enabled or clock is frozen.

[00252] Debugging DSP peripherals is supported through DSP Debug block 141, since all these peripherals are mapped into DSP peripheral space.

[00253] Inter-Processor Communication block 128 allows Microprocessor

101 and DSP 102 to exchange messages and synchronize and schedule tasks. This is shown in further detail in FIGURE 15. Communications are mainly defined at the system (software) implementation level as a two-way interrupt driven scheme. The hardware of this block provides a number of interrupt sources from DSP to Microprocessor 101. (Microprocessor 101 interrupts DSP 102 through Interrupt Controller, as previously described.) The content of the interrupts will be determined by system applications. The IPC configuration registers are described in Tables 123-126.

[00254] Digital Audio Input/Output 129 is shown in further detail in FIGURE 16. This block provides audio data input/output through two primary sub-blocks I2SOUT 1601 and I2SIN 1602.

[00255] ISOUT Block 1601 is shown in additional detail in FIGURE 16B. I2SOUT 1601 drives the audio output data pin (Aud\_OUT) and also provides audio data and controls to PWM 130 and S/DFIF transmitter 1603. In the preferred embodiment, four output channels are supported through four FIFOs 1604 a,b each 16 entries deep and 24 bit wide. Channel configuration is implemented in registers readable and writable by microprocessor 101 and/or DSP 102. ISOUT block 1601 can generate interrupts to the controlling microprocessor DSP when its FIFO is empty (empt\_int) or half-empty (hempt\_int) such that the FIFOs can be refilled.

[00256] The I2SOUT registers are listed in Tables 127-130.

[00257] The port control register DAOCTL performs two functions, namely, specifying parameters to generate the SCLK and LRCLK clocks to PWM 130, SPDIF Transmitter 1603, I2SOUT block 1601 and I2SIN block 1602, and specifying I2SOUT specific control parameters. Since all active audio channels run synchronously, Channel 0 (DAODATO) is assumed to be the master FIFO for generating interrupts and FIFOCNT (i.e., a dipstick is associated with DAODATO). All the bits are readable & writable by DSP 102 and microprocessor 101 unless otherwise specified in their description field in the tables.

and microprocessor 101 control of I2SOUT. In the preferred embodiment, the current controller 101/102 of I2SOUT first ramps down the output, shuts down any active output(s), and directs microprocessor 101 to do the switch (through the inter-processor message protocol) discussed above. Microprocessor 101 then writes an appropriate value to CNTL\_SEL register and requests the new controller 101/102 to issue a reset on I2SOUT. The new controller then writes a 1 to RST\_I2SOUT bit which resets all registers in I2SOUT except CNTL\_SEL and RST\_I2SOUT. Then the new controller writes a 0 to RST\_I2SOUT, to deassert reset, and configures the other control bits and enables the output. In normal operation, DSP I02 will mostly be using this block, thus system reset condition is set to give DSP 102 control over I2SOUT 1601.

[00259] SLVCLKGT is used to gate the SCLK and LRCLK in the SLAVE mode to ensures no power consumption results when the I2S block in not being used, but configured for S/LRCLK to be input from outside. BURSTMOD allows PWM to be able to play data while I2SIN is in Burst mode. Details of this operation will be explained with respect to I2SIN block 1602.

[00260] CNTL\_SEL bit is always readable by microprocessor 101, even when microprocessor 101 is not in control of I2SOUT. When microprocessor 101 is not in control of I2SOUT, meaning CNTL\_SEL is set to 0, a microprocessor read from DAOCTL will result in the return of a correct value of only the CNTL\_SEL bit, other bits will be 0.

[00261] The DAOCFG register 1605 controls the relations of I2S-OUT pin with LRCLK and SCLK. It provides a flexible mechanism for specifying the data output formats. The PREDLY field specifies the number of SCLK cycle to wait after an LRCLK edge before outputting sample data. The BITRES field specifies the number of bits per sample (up to 24) to be output. The INTERDLY field specifies the number of SCLK cycles to wait before outputting the next data sample (meaningful only for 4 channel output configuration). Unless otherwise specified, all bits are read/writable by the controller 101/102 in control of this block.

The CLKDIV register is used to specify the divide value which is used to divide the AUD\_CLK to generate MCLK, SCLK, and PWMCLK. When EXTMCLK is programmed to be 0, MCLK is generated from clock manager providing AUD\_CLK, and is routed to MCLK pin as MCLKOUT, if the bit SLAVE is set to 0. MCLKDIV specifies the divide value with which the AUD\_CLK frequency can be divided to produce MCLK. When SLAVE is set to 0, MCLK (generated from AUD\_CLK or MCLKIN as specified by EXTMCLK) is divided by SCLKDIV to generate SCLK, and routed to SCLK pin as SCLKOUT.

PWMCLKDIV is the divide value with which AUD\_CLK is divided and sent to PWM engine 130 as over sampled clock. (As this register resides in I2SOUT, CNTL\_SEL is set first to appropriate master before that master can write to this register.)

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US 81

[00263] As mentioned above, I2SOUT block 1601 can generate three interrupts, EMPT\_INT, HEMPT\_INT and OUT\_FSINT, EMPT/HEMPT\_TNT: Two events can trigger to these interrupt: FIFO Half Empty (HEMPT) and FIFO Empty (EMPT), when enabled by HEMPT\_INT\_EN and EMPT\_INT\_EN bits of register DAOCFG. In particular, these events are generated based on condition of DAODATO; HEMPT is generated when FIFOCNT decreases from 8 to 7 and EMPT is generated when the FIFOCNT decreases from 1 to 0. These interrupts are sent to the processor 101/102 controlling the IS2OUT block.

[00264] The OUT\_FSINT interrupt is enabled by FSINT\_EN bit and takes effect after I2SOUT \_EN or PWM\_EN is set. If the SLAVE bit is 0, meaning LRCLK and SCLK are being produced from audio block 129 and sent out, then the interrupt occurs on the positive edge of LRCLK\_OUT if LRCLK\_FLP is 0, and with negative edge of LRCLK\_OUT if LRCLK\_FLP is 1. If SLAVE bit is 1, meaning LRCLK and SCLK are being sent from an external source to audio block 129, then the interrupt occurs on the positive edge of LRCLK\_IN if LRCLK\_FLP is 0, and with negative edge of LRCLK\_IN if LRCLK\_FLP is 1.

[00265] The FSINT bit transitions to 1 on the interrupt occurs and is cleared by the controller 101/102 of I2S\_out, by writing a 0 to this bit. Thereafter, the interrupt line is lowered after one controller clock cycle. Thus if another FS interrupt edge occurs during the clearing clock cycle, it is ignored, and interrupt line is lowered at the next edge of controller clock. All the register bits selected to OUT\_FSINT belongs to the DAOCTL register.

[00266] For either I2SOUT/PWM or I2SIN block 1602 in the preferred embodiment, either CLK(with EXTMCLK==O) or MCLKIN (with EXTMCLK==1) must be present. Thus when I2SIN block 1602 is being used alone, the programmer sets -up the clock controls in CLKDIV and DAOCTL registers in I2SOUT block 1601. This is accomplished by setting appropriate value to CNTL\_SEL bit of DAOCTL, and then writing appropriate values to CLKDIV and DAOCTL registers.

[00267] The following sequence of operations is preferably start-up the I2SOUT block (no PWM). Microprocessor 101 sets up the I2SOUT control by writing to the DAOCTLCNTL\_SEL register. The default value for this register is 0, giving DSP 122 control. The Processor controlling I2SOUT fills the I2SOUT FIFOs, DAODATx, as necessary and sets-up DAOCFG and DAOCTL with appropriate values for data and clock configuration. The controlling processor next enables I2SOUT, by setting I2SOUT\_EN and enables CLKEN bit of the DAOCTL register to enable the FIFO data pull out. Audio data starts with the first LRCLK/SCLK output (in SLAVE==0 mode), or after 3 LRCLK delay if LRCLK/SCLK is provided from outside (SLAVE==1 mode). One way to stop the I2SOUT at this point is by setting I2SOUT\_EN==0. Otherwise, even if the current FIFO is empty, the last data will be sent out as long as the audio clock is present. Another way of shutting-down I2SOUT block 1601 is by setting CLKEN==0, thus stopping audio clock. However, if I2SIN block 1601 is used at

the same time, it is also turned off as the audio clock to I2SIN also comes from I2SOUT clock generation block

[00268] When the output FIFOs 1604 a,c reach an empty state (i.e., read and write pointer are same), and a further read request is performed, the read-pointer is frozen. The device pulling data from the FIFOs keeps receiving the last sample (16th) repeatedly until the processor sends more data into the FIFOs. Hence, a read pointer crossing the write pointer is prevented, which would otherwise cause the FIFO status as being shown as full.

[00269] When not in control, microprocessor 101 or DSP 102 cannot read the registers of AUD\_I0 block, except that microprocessor 101 can always read the CNTL\_SEL bit of DAOCTL/DAICTL. When microprocessor 101 is not in control, reading to these two registers produces a correct value for CNTL\_SEL bit (==0, as DSP in CNTL), and 0 for all other bits. Reset of AUD\_CLK block is same as reset of I2SOUT, thus, when the RST\_I2SOUT bit in DAOCTL register is toggled, clock control and divide bits reset. Also, the controller 101/102 controlling I2SOUT block resets and resets the clock control and div registers.

[00270] SPDIF transmitter 1603 transmits serial audio data from Ch\_0 and Ch\_1 in SPDIF format through AUD\_OUT pin and can be used along with PWM engine 1604 and I2SIN block 1603. Either SPDIF transmitter 1603 or I2SOUT 1601 can be used at one time. The SPDIF control register bits are listed in Tables 132 and 133.

[00271] ISPCTL is the control register for SPDIF Transmitter, and SPCSA and SPCSB are Channel Status registers. All register bits are read and writable unless specified.

In one configuration, the AUD\_CLK block 1605 is to generate the [00272] SPDIF master clock SP\_MCLK. In this mode, PWMCLKDIV is set in the CLKDIV register such that AUD\_CLK divided by PWMCLKDIV produces the AudClk. This clock is then used to generate 256Fs using hardware, and then sent to SPDIF Transmitter 1603. If PWM\_EN is set, both PWM and SPDIF Transmitters can play audio data from Ch-0 and Ch-1 FIFOS together. If the bit SP\_EXTCLK set to 1, the INTERN\_MASTER\_CLK is used [00273] to GENERATE SP\_MCLK. This INTERN\_MASTER\_CLK can come from External MCLK if EXTMCLK is set to 1 and SLVCLKGT is set to 0 in DAOCTL register. Else, if EXTMCLK is set to 0, AUD\_CLK gets divided by MCLKDIV value of CLKDIV register and becomes INTEM\_MASTER\_CLK. In either case, INTERN- MASTER\_CLK is either 256Fs or AudClk frequency, as specified by SP\_MCLKRT. Using the information in SP\_MCLKRT the INTEM\_MASTER\_CLK is divided by two or used directly as SP\_MCLK. I2SIN block 1602, shown in further detail in FIGURE 16D receives [00274] audio input data in either two formats: serial data synchronized by an LR/SCLK clock or a bit stream in a burst mode without synchronization to an LRCLK. The synchronized data can be either uncompressed PCM or compressed bursty data and the unsynchronized data can be bursty compressed data. This block takes

SCLK and LRCLK from I2SOUT block 1601. In the illustrated embodiment, I2SIN port 1602 consists of two channel FIFOs 1606a,b, each 16 entries deep and The channel configurations are specified in register. This block generates interrupts when its FIFOs 1605 a,b are either half-full or full to the controlling microprocessor 101 or DSP 102 to sequence data exchanges.

[00275] The I2SIN control registers are listed in Tables 137-139.

[00276] The port control register DAICTL performs two functions: defining modes of operation, and defining control parameters specifying the input data format.

[00277] The CNTL SEL and RST I2SIN registers provide control arbitration of I2SIN between microprocessor 101 and DSP 102, similar to that which is done for I2SOUT block 1601. DAIDATO and DAIDAT1 bits have same attributes as DAODATx registers, except working as input data storage.

In CHANMOD=0 mode, input data is synchronized with the LRCLK and SCLK from I2SOUT block 1601. In this mode, the data format is specified by PREDLY and BITRES bits, as is done for the I2SOUT data output. When LRCLK=1, DAIDAT0 receives the data, and when LRCLK=0, DAIDAT1 receives the data (if LRCLK\_FLP is set in DAOCTL, LRCLK=0 provides data for DAIDATO, and LRCLK=1 provided data for DAIDATI).

[00279] A test feature is added called LOOPTEST which can be used to verify I2S block performance. When LOOPTEST is on, the I2S\_OUT output of I2SOUT block 1601, is fed back as input to I2SIN block 1602. The controlling

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

processor 101/102 can therefore send data out and receive the same data to verify the I2S performance. For this test mode, the I2SOUT is programmed to output only two channel data, and I2SIN is programmed to input in normal mode. Both blocks preferably have the same PREDLY and BITRES values.

[00280] A half Full interrupt is issued as soon as DAIDATO's dipsticks (# of data) goes from 8 to 9, at which point, both the FIFOs, DAIDATO and DAIDATI are guaranteed to be half full.

In the input block 1602 CHANMOD=CMPMOD=0 (Bursty [00281] Compressed) mode, a 1 is written to SLAVE bit in DAOCNT register. In this case, the SCLK is actually a Burst mode clock mode, staying low until the data arrives, then rapidly toggling to input the data packet, and finally returning low again until next data packet arrives. As soon as 24 bits of data arrive, they are loaded into the input FIFOs 1606a,b. Both the FIFOs act as a single FIFO from Half Full interrupt point of view. Data loading starts from DAIDATO 1606a and when it becomes full, DAIDATI 1606b starts loading input data. A half Full interrupt occurs as soon as dipstick of the unified FIFO (FIFOCNT in the CMPSTS register) goes from 16 to 17. A full interrupt is generated when FIFOCNT reaches 32. The controlling processor 101/102 reads data out from CMPDAT register in this mode instead of reading from DAIDATx. CMPDAT supplies data from DAIDATO or DAIDATI depending on the unified FIFO read pointer. The LRCLK pin is programmed to provide Half\_Empty flag to the data sender when the controlling processor 101/102 has processed 16x24 bits of data and is ready to receive another 16x24 bits of data. The polarity of Half-Empty flag is programmable by the HEMPTPOL bit of the DAICTL register.

[00282] As already noted, in the Bursty Compressed mode, an irregular SCLK is taken as input to the chip, thus prohibiting I2SOUT block 1601 from playing data out at the same time. Notwithstanding, an internally generated MCLK can be used to generate SCLK and LRCLK which can be used to play/output data to PWM engine 130, although these clocks cannot be used to output I2S\_OUT data.

[00283] To make both the I2SIN and I2SOUT blocks 1601/1602 operate in PWM-only mode, the DAOCNT register BURSTMOD bit is turned on. This enables I2SOUT to generate S/LRCLK out of AUDCLK/MCLK (as indicated by EXTMCLK), and generate/provide data to PWM engine 130. I2SOUT is turned off by writing a 0 to I2SOUT\_EN bit.

In the CHANMOD=CMPMOD= 1 (Synced Compressed ) mode, compressed data arrives synchronized with the LRCLK and SCLK. Data are written into the unified FIFO only when 24 bits of valid data arrive, not with the change of LRCLK phase. The PREDLY, BITRES are used to define the valid data window for each LRCLK phase. The HFULL and FULL interrupts are generated the same way as in Bursty Compressed mode. LRCLKPIN is used as Half Empty indicator or may be used as input depending on SLAVE bit of DAICTL. The data sender and data receiver both know the data arrival rate,

defined by Fs rate and the PREDLY, and BITRES, and thus can establish steady state data flow in and out of FIFO 1606a.b.

In the input CHANMOD=1, data is written into the FIFOs 1606a,b [00285] only when 24 valid data-bits arrive. If there are data packets in which number of data words is not modulo 24, some data may still reside in the shift register at the end of that data packet transmission. In this scenario, the controlling processor 101/102 can read the rest of the data from shift register, and can disregard the old data with next read from CMPDAT to determine the start of next data packet. To facilitate this read to shift register is allowed (SREGDAT), and a pointer indicating # of valid data in shift register is kept in SREGPTR bits of the CMPSTS register. SRERDAT, CMPDAT, DAIDATx all are right adjusted, meaning LSB at bit\_0 and MSB varies depending on # of valid data. The DAISTS register holds the status of DAIDATO and DAIDATI [00286]

FIFOs (all bits are preferably read only, except for FSINT\_EN and FSINT). These register all hold audio input data in right-adjusted format.

Block 1607 generates three interrupts, FULL\_INT, HfULL\_INT, and [00287] IN\_FSINT. FULL\_INT and /HFULL\_INT interrupts are generated on FIFO Full (FULL) and FIFO Half Full (HFULL), respectively. These two event have different interpretation in PCM mode and Compressed mode.

In PCM mode, HFULL is generated when FIFOCNTI transitions [00288] from 8 to 9, and FULL is generated when FIFOCNT1 reaches to 16. When HFULL occurs, both the FIFOs 1605 a,b (DAIDATO and DAIDATI) are

guaranteed to be half full. Similarly, FULL is issued when both FIFOs 1605 a,b are full. Thus DAIDATO and DAIDATI are synchronized in PCM mode.

[00289] In Compressed mode, both FIFOs 1605 a,b work as a single unified FIFO. HFULL is generated when FIFOCNT transitions from 16 to 17, and FULL is generated when FIFOCNT reaches to 32. When HFULL occurs, the unified FIFO is guaranteed to be half full, and FULL occurs when the unified FIFO is full.

[00290] ARM/DSP can program FULL\_INT\_EN and HFULL\_INT\_EN bits of DAICTL to individually enable these interrupts.

triggered off of the I2S\_IN LRCLK edge as is done for I2S\_OUT. The I2S\_IN LRCLK differs from I2S\_OUT LRCLK only when SLAVE bit is the BURSTMOD bit is 1 in the DAOCTL register, and PWM 130 and I2SIN 1602 are enabled. In this case, I2S\_IN block 1602 receives LRCLK and SCLK from the outside, while LRCLK and SCLK in I2S\_OUT block 1601 are received from clock manager AUD\_CLK. The interrupt starts after I2SIN\_EN bit of DAICTL register is set. To clear the interrupt, a write 0 to the FSINT bit of the DAISTS register is performed by the controller 101/102 of I2S\_IN block 1602.

[00292] The preferred start-up procedure for I2S\_IN block 1602 is as follows. A write is performed by microprocessor 101 to the CNTL\_SEL bit of the DAICTL register to setup the control of I2SIN to the appropriate controller 101/102. This controller then configures I2SIN by writing to the DAICTL and

WSM Docket No.

2836- P139US

DAISTS registers for the audio input data and interrupts. Control of I2SOUT 1601 block is assumed by writing to I2SOUT CNTL\_SEL register and enabling the audio clock by setting up registers in I2SOUT block. I2SIN block 1602 is enabled by writing 1 to I2SIN\_EN bit. This starts the process of inputting audio data after some delay. START\_AUD\_IN bit of DAISTS transitions to 1 when the data starts shifting in. The selected Controller 101/102 then reads out the data from input FIFOs as they become available. If FIFOs 1605 a,b become full and a write still occurs, the extra write is ignored. If a FIFO becomes empty, and the controller 101/102 tries to read, the last valid data is sent.

[00293] To stop inputting audio data, the I2SIN\_EN bit is set to 0, which shuts down the audio clock to I2SIN block down 1602. Alternatively, by setting CLKEN==0 of DAOCTL all audio clocks can be shut down (to PWM, I2SOUT, and I2SIN), thus stopping inputting audio data. As long as the audio clock to I2SIN is active, whatever logic level the audio input pin is at will be accepted by I2SIN as audio input.

[00294] PWM block 130 generates left and right channel pulse width modulated (PWM) data for driving external headphones or speakers through the Aud-Out port. In addition to register DAOCTL and PWMCTL used in conjunction with I2SOUT discussed above, PWM control register PWMCTL of Table 134 controls PWM operation.

[00295] PWM engine 130 is reset with system reset or R\_UP==O. Clocks to PWM engine are gated to 0 as long as PWM\_EN=0. The controlling device

(microprocessor 101 or DSP 102) may fill the FIFOS, as done for I2SOUT startup, and sets PWM\_EN = 1. This starts clocks to PWM engine 130. The controlling device next sets R\_UP = 1 and waits for R\_UP\_DONE. At following positive edge of the clock, PWM engine 130 comes out of reset. After R\_UP\_DONE becomes 1, the controlling device next enables interrupts (DAOCFG bits), and sets the block 1601 PREDLY, INTERDLY, BITRES (DAOCFG,DAOCFG bits), and I2SOUT\_EN(DAOCTL bit) registers, if I2SOUT block 1601 is meant to on at the same time as PWM 130. The controlling processor 101/102 sets CLKEN=1 (DAOCTL bit) and Audio data are sent into PWM engine from DAODATO and DAODAT1 FIFO 1604a,b same way as was done using I2SOUT startup. If FIFO becomes empty, PWM engine 130 continues receiving the last valid data.

[00296] A preferred sequence of halting PWM engine 130 is as follows. The controlling processor fills DAODATO and DAODAT1 FIFOs 1605 a,b with 0 AUD\_DATA, and waits for these 0 data to start being output. Then it sets R\_UP=0 and R\_DOWN=1 and waits for R\_DOWN\_DONE to transition to 1. When R DOWN\_DONE becomes 1, the following the clock edge puts PWM 130 in reset state. The controlling device sets PWM\_EN=0 which gates clocks to PWM 130 to 0 (power save mode) and may set R\_DOWN=0 so that PWM 130 is ready for next startup. Setting CLKEN=0 also shuts down PWM 130 as it stops the audio clock.

[00297] System 100 has total 32 general purpose I/O (GPIO) pins which are multiplexed with other functional pins and accessible to Microprocessor 101. The GPIO functions are shown generally at block 140 in FIGURE 1 and in further detail in FIGURE 17. These pins and their various functions are listed in Tables 145-155.

[00298] 32 GPIO pins 1703 in the illustrated embodiment are controlled by microprocessor 101 individually through APB interface 1701. Each GPIO pin can generate an interrupt request to the microprocessor 101, if selected to do so. Specifically, interrupt block 1702 generates one interrupt request in response to one of four events defined in register occurs at any GPIO pins. An additional register acts as global interrupt enable bit for GPIO and individual pin selection is made through a mask register.

[00299] Security Fuse block 119 contains 256 fuses which give a unique ID for each chip. A preferred mapping of the security fuses is provided in Tables 173-176.

[00300] When the fuses are blown, a flag enables internal security ROM. Meanwhile, a Hamming Code is generated by hardware based upon the 256-bit fuse value for error concealment and correction. The fuse value is read-able by security code only when the fuse is programmed (blown). Depending on the fuse programming, different microprocessor 101 ROM segments are mapped to microprocessor 101 address location 0 for boot-up. The internal 12K-byte

Microprocessor 101 ROM contains three different segments: 1 Kbyte Security code, 1 K-byte alternative code, 10K-byte normal code.

[00301] Security Gates/Access Protection block 142 provides access protection when the security fuses are programmed. In the preferred embodiment, access permission is granted under the following conditions:

- (1) When the fuses are not programmed (non-security chip), access protection is not engaged at any time;
- (2) When the fuses are programmed, (security chip), access protection is engaged as default;
- (3) Microprocessor 101 is allowed access to the protected areas only in the supervisor mode when the protection is enabled;
- (4) Microprocessor 101 is allowed access to the protected areas in either supervisor or user mode when the protection is disabled;
- (5) The protection can be disabled by Microprocessor 101 in supervisor mode only;
- (6) In the security mode TIC operations are not allowed and only Microprocessor 101 can enable the DMA and LCD; and

 (7) The protection mode registers can be modified by Microprocessor 101 only in Privilege Mode.

Timer 131 is a 33-bit down counter 1801, as shown in FIGURE 18. The corresponding configuration registers are described in Tables 140-143. The source for this down counter is the 16-bit divider 1802 which provides a divide of up to 65536. The input clock to divider 1802 is either the audio clock (AudClk), the MEMCLK, the USBCLK or the external clock. The select is done using the STC\_CLK\_SEL field in STCCTL register. The STC\_EN bit in register STCCTL is set to 1 for the timer to start the downcount.

[00303] On a read of the STC\_COUNTER0, the higher 24 bits of the down count are returned, at the same instant a sample of the lower 9 bits are stored into the STC\_CNTR\_SHDW register 1803. This value is unchanged till the next read of the STC\_COUNTER0 register. The instantaneous value of the lower 9 bits can be read by reading the STC\_COUNTER1 register.

[00304] If the DSP clock is running less that 2x of the STC counter clock (after divide), the read of the results may not be valid. The counter rolls back to the start value after reaching 0.

[00305] System 100 operates in conjunction with a "soft cache system" that supports microprocessor 101 designs which do not include a hardware cache and/or memory management unit (MMU). For example, in the preferred embodiment of system 100, an ARM7tdmi microprocessor is used in

microprocessor core 101. This particular microprocessor does not include either a hardware cache or MMU.

[00306] The soft cache system preferably uses external SRAM for storing code and on-chip memory for data constants or other secure information. In the illustrated embodiment, a virtual (soft cache) memory space of 2Mbytes of external and internal SRAM is dedicated to soft cache, although the size, as well as the location in memory, are not critical and can change in actual implementations.

[00307] The software cache is set-up as a 16-way set associative system, with each set associated with a single cache line in the soft cache memory space. This is shown logically in FIGURE 19A and a block diagram is provided in FIGURE 19C. The soft cache configuration and control registers are provided in Tables 156-161.

[00308] Each set of the 16 sets is represented in register by an entry including a tag field and a validity bit. The cache line size is programmable to 128, 256, 512 or 1024 bytes. Each cache line space is addressable by the N lower order virtual (CPU) address bits N - 1: 0, where N is 7, 8, 9 or 10, depending on whether the cache line size is 128, 256, 512, or 1024 bytes, respectively. Bits 21:N of the virtual address then represent a cache tag. The remaining bits 31:22 are the block address to the assigned memory block, which could be controlled by hardwired logic. Hardware comparators compare the tag

field of each CPU address generated with tag fields stored in the soft cache registers.

[00309] A soft cache operation is illustrated in the flow chart of FIGURE 19B.

[00310] At Step 1901, an virtual (CPU) address is generated by microprocessor 101, which are then checked at Step 1902 to determine whether its block address is within the soft cache address space. The case where the virtual address is within the soft cache address space will be considered first.

fields in the corresponding 16 register entries by the hardware comparators at Step 1903. If a match occurs, the index corresponding to the matching entry in soft cache is taken for use in generating a physical address to the appropriate location in the soft cache memory block. For a 16-way cache system, the entries are indexed with four bits from 0 to 15. In an embodiment where the soft cache address space starts at 0000 and works upward, bits N - 1 : 0 of the CPU address become bits N - 1 : 0 of the physical address and address the location in the cache line. The 4-bit index from the matching soft cache entry replaces bits N + 3 : N of the physical address and operates as an offset which selects the proper cache line. The remaining bits (31:N+4) come from the virtual address and are used for RAM bank, block and chip select. The required read or write to the addressed area in the soft cache memory space subsequently takes place.

[00312] For example, assume that the cache line size is programmed to be 256 bytes. In this case, N = 8. Bits 21 : 8 of the CPU address are therefore compared with the cache tags in the table entries. Also assume that a hit occurs to entry #5 and the corresponding 4-bit index is 5. For simplicity, the soft cacheable block of memory will have an arbitrarily selected starting address of 0. The physical address (in hex) is therefore 000005CC, where CC are bits 7 : 0 of the CPU address to a location within cache line 5.

[00313] Note that the soft cache area in memory could start at a given address, for example 7fff, and work downward. In this case, bits 14:N are modified based on cache size. This scheme insures that location 0000, which maintains the interrupt vectors, does not become part of the cache.

[00314] Next consider the case where a cache miss occurs during comparison Step 1903. A hardware soft cache history register is maintained which tracks the last four hits (matches). Preferably, this register is a shift register which shifts in the 4-bit index from each matching entry, if that index differs from the index of the previous matching index. In other words, if two consecutive indices are the same, no shifting takes place such that no two consecutive indices in the shift register are equal. This register improves the performance of the software replacement handler invoked on a cache miss.

[00315] On the miss, a soft cache abort is signaled to microprocessor 101 by setting an Abort Status bit in register. (This bit is cleared automatically after being read). The address causing the cache miss (abort) is written into an Abort

Address register. Setting the Abort Status bit initiates the replacement handler routine.

[00316] The replacement handler routine selects the cache line to be replaced based on the contents of the history register. For example, the cache line replaced can be one of those not corresponding to the four indices stored in the history register. The required data is fetched from its current location in memory, using the address in the Abort Address register and loaded into the selected cache line, and the cache tag in the corresponding cache entry is updated. The source location could be in NAND or serial flash and the software handler is capable of performing the specific access procedures normally required for these types of memory. To implement this memory, the DMA engine and other system resources are invoked as required. Once the data has been encached and the cache tag updated, the instruction causing the cache miss can be successfully reissued.

[00317] In the case where the CPU address is not within the soft cache address space and no abort has occurred, then the CPU address is used as the physical address to the RAM (Step 1907).

[00318] At Step 1908, the physical address is used to access the addressed RAM space. The data is exchanged with the CPU at Step 1909.

[00319] RAM test block 139 contains a weak-write controller, as does DSP RAM test block 144. Two separate RAM weak-write control registers are therefore implemented for microprocessor 101 RAM and DSP RAM respectively.

These are described further in Tables 177 and 178. Thus, the corresponding RAM weak-write control register resides in either microprocessor 101 memory space or DSP peripheral space. The RAM modules in either memory space can be divided into two banks so that when one bank is in weak-write test mode and the other can be used for test program.

[00320] The microprocessor RAM weak-write control register is used to test the data integrity of microprocessor 101 and along with the associated SRAM retention test mode controller put the microprocessor RAM 137 in the SRAM retention test mode. For the SRAM retention test, the RAM is divided into two portions: High bank and Low bank. The SRAM retention test controller generates two signals for each portion: weak0 and weak1. Hence, in all there are 4 retention test signals.

[00321] The 16 most significant bits of the 32-bit address line are decoded by an external decoder to generate a select signal HSELRamTest for the RAM\_TEST 139 controller which acts as a slave on 32-bit local AHB bus 104. The remaining 16 bits can address 2<sup>16</sup> registers inside RAM\_TEST controller 139; although since only 4 bits are required for retention testing, just one register is addressed. These are preferably the 4 least significant bits of the 32-bit register. An intermediate signal generated by combinational logic acting on the 16 least significant bits of the address line is combined with the HSELRamTest select signal and the HREADY in signal asserted by the previous local AHB slave to generate a register enable signal. Along with appropriate read or write

signal, the user can either read this register for the existing retention testing signals or can write new values depending upon the portion of RAM the user wants to test for data integrity by writing either a weak0 or a weak1.

[00322] The DSP RAM weak-write control register is used to test the data integrity of DSP RAM 133-136. RAM test block 144 contains a SRAM retention test controller which can put the data and the program RAM in the retention test mode, including a program RAM (PRAM) 133 and the data RAM, consisting of GRAM (Global RAM) 136, XRAM 134, and YRAM 135. So effectively, there are four DSP RAM portions to test for data integrity. For the purpose of retention test, each of these portions is divided into two subportions: High bank and Low bank. The retention test controller generates two signals for each subportion: weakO and weak1. Hence, in all there are 16 retention test signals.

[00323] The four most significant bits of the 16-bit DSP address line are decoded by an external decoder to generate an intermediate select signal for the DSP\_RAM\_TEST block which acts as a peripheral device on 24-bit bi-directional DSP bus. The remaining 12 bits can address 2<sup>12</sup> 24-bit registers inside DSP RAM test controller 144; but since only 16 bits are required for retention testing, just one register is addressed. The address of the register that provides the necessary 16 bits is 0x000, which are preferably the 16 least significant bits of the 24-bit register. An intermediate signal generated by combinational logic acting on the 12 least significant bits of the address line is combined with the previously discussed decoded intermediate signal and a peripheral select signal

to generate a register enable signal. Along with appropriate read or write signal, the user can either read this register for the existing retention test signals or can write new values depending upon the sub-portion of data or program RAM the user wants to test for data integrity by writing either a weaklO or a weak1.

[00324] System 100 has multiple power planes as listed in Table 182. The advantages of different power planes are the ability to use minimal power supply for a given power plane, and the ability to individually turn on/off power planes for power saving purpose.

[00325] Since there are multiple power planes existing in which allow user to turn on/off the supply to save the power consumption, it is essential to provide a means to switch between different power modes. The power modes are defined as follows with reference to FIGURE 20A:

- 1) Cold Mode: All supplies to the chip are off. All circuit blocks are non-functional
- 2) Super Stand-by Mode: Only RTC and 32KHz oscillator is running, and Stand-By plane 2005 is powered. Quite-analog (2001), PWMVREF (2002), pad-ring (2003) and core-logic power planes (2004) are off.
- 3) Normal Mode: All functional units are running, and all power planes (2001-2005) are powered.

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US

- 4) Standby Mode: All power are on except the VCO 120 is powered down. Thus, there is no clock activities at all, except the Oscillator and RTC are running.
- 5) Pause Mode: All power planes are on; microprocessor 101 is in pause mode by setting up the APB Pause block. Microprocessor 101 wakes up in response to any interrupt and continues execution. All other functional blocks can be enabled or disabled by microprocessor 101 software.

of FIGURE 20B and the flow chart of FIGURE 20C. After the power switch of the system is turned on while in cold mode (state/step 2010), the signal STBYVDD is provided to the chip first, at Step 201. This also generates a power-on-reset signal which is fed to PRSTn pin. After STBYVDD is on, on-chip oscillator 120 and RTC 124 start to function. Meanwhile, the active power-on-reset will de-assert STBYn pin controlling the voltages VDDRING, VDDCORE, QVDD and PWMVDD allowing power to flow to the chip. After they become stable, an internal circuit generates a delayed version of PRSTn to reset the rest of the chip. As a result of this transition, the chip enters the normal mode at Step 2012 with all the registers at their default values and the on-chip RAM content is random. Once in normal mode, microprocessor 101 fully

controls all the resources on the chip, as well as determines the power mode transition.

[00327] When microprocessor 101 causes the chip to leave normal mode for Super-Standby mode, it performs all the necessary system functions, followed by asserting the STBYn bit through the STBY control bit (Step 2013). As the result of asserting STBYn pin, all the power supplies except STBYVDD are turned off and only on-chip oscillator 120 and RTC 124 remain functional (Step 2014)

[00328] The transition from super-standby mode to the normal mode requires asserting WAKEUP pin high at Step 2015 for a certain of period. This activates the STBYn pin to the low state which turns on the other power supplies. It also generates a delayed version of reset which resets the entire chip, except for RTC 134, after which the power becomes stable. By releasing the WAKEUP pin from high to low(default value), the status of the chip is exactly same as at the end of the transition from Cold Mode to Normal Mode.

[00329] When microprocessor 101 is in normal mode, it can transition to the Stand-by Mode by powering down VCO 120. This shuts-down all clock activity on the chip. Specifically, at Step 2016, microprocessor 101 sets the power down bit for PLL1 which generates the bus clocks and processor clocks in the SYSCON. The power supplies remain on at Step 2017, although the clocked circuitry is effectively off and not consuming powers.

[00330] To leave the Stand-by Mode to Normal Mode at Step 2018, any rising edge of GPIO[3:0] or falling edge of GPIO[7:4] is used to prompt microprocessor 101. This event clears the VCO power-down bit so that the VCO 120 resumes activity. It also generates an interrupt to microprocessor 101 (Interrupt (12)) to indicate the exit of stand-by mode. Since the microprocessor 101 interrupt is level sensitive: this interrupt request will last 1 ms and is then deasserted automatically. It is microprocessor 101 application responsibility to reply to the interrupt.

[00331] In Pause Mode, microprocessor 101 is halted at Step 2019. All the other devices on the chip are still powered and functional. Microprocessor 101 can enter the Pause Mode by the setting Microprocessor Sleep register in Remap/Pause block at Step 2020. Any interrupt will wake microprocessor 101 from Sleep mode at Step 2021

[00332] Any time all the powers including STBYVDD are taken away (Step 2022), the device enters Cold Mode (Step 2023)

[00333] When entire chip is in the Normal Mode, DSP 102 can be in either in a halt or an operation mode. After power up with power-on-reset presented, DSP is by default disabled. Microprocessor 101 must then enable the DSP 102 by asserting the DSP Clock Enable bit in the SYSCON block. Once DSP 102 is activated, it enters its operation mode.

[00334] During any time in operation mode, DSP core 102 can execute a HALT instruction and enter halt mode (low-power mode). Any interrupt which is

enabled before DSP enters halt mode will wake up the DSP, and bring DSP 102 back into operation mode.

[00335] Microprocessor 101 has three different address maps: in each mode, one of the internal microprocessor ROM, RAM or external SRAM/Flash memory is aliased to microprocessor 101 address location "0". The details of the address maps are provided in Tables 183-185. Even though microprocessor 101 instructions support byte/half-word/word access, only internal ROM/RAM, GRAM and external SRAM/Flash allow byte/half-word access.

[00336] The DSP Memory Maps are summarized in Tables 186-189.

[00337] The power-up (boot-up) modes and hardware configuration are summarized in Table 190.

[00338] When powering up the device it is mandatory that the PRSTn signal be held low for a minimum of 100us after Vdd has settled. At the rising edge of Power on Reset (PRSTn), 9 pins will be latched and the memory map of microprocessor 101 will be set to mode X (with the boot ROM at physical address 0). The latched pins will be used to provide mode selection and boot source selection. The latched values will be used by Hardware and Firmware appropriately. All latched pins will have 100K internal pull up resistors and can be disabled via software. The Hardware mode selection pins are: TACK/TRSTn (pin 126), TST[0:1] (Pin 124,125) and PORTST[0:1](Pin 119,120). The Software mode selection pins are: GPIO[3:0](Pin 95,96,97,98).

[00339] The value of those pins latched upon a rising edge of PRSTn and/or RSTOn will be held in a read-only register- Remap register (ARM Addr 0x8008 0020). Its OPMOD1 field is corresponding to the Hardware mode, and OPMODO is corresponding to Software mode.

[00340] TACKITRSTn is used as JTAG Reset when JTAG is enabled.

JTAG is disabled during reset and is enabled JTAG via software.

In the Normal 32KHz mode, the 32KHz on-chip crystal will be used as reference clock to VCO 120. System boots with the PLLs not locked. If a locked PLL is required to boot (i,e., UART), software will wait until the PLL is locked by polling a PLL lock bit. The REF1 and REF2 voltages are set to select Xtal source and TCM1 and TCM2 are set to select the VCO. In this mode, assertion of RSTOn will cause the TRST, PORTST[1:0] to be re-latched, however TST[1:0] and GPIO[3:0] will not be latched.

In the Normal ExtVCO mode, system 100 will be clocked from the external source (Extclk) clocking the VCO 120. The REF1 and REF2 voltages are set to select external clock source and TCM1 and TCM2 are set to select VCO 120. In this mode assertion of RSTOn will cause the TRST, PORTST[1:0] to be relatched, however TST[1:0] and GPIO[3:0] will not be latched.

[00343] In the TestOp VCObp mode, the system 100 is clocked directly from the external source. In this mode VCO 120 is bypassed. TCM1 and TCM2 are set to select the external clock source and REF1 and REF2 are don't care.

107

In this mode assertion of RSTOn will cause the TRST, PORTST[1:0], TST[1:0] and GPIO[3:0] to be latched.

In the TestOp Xtalbp mode, the system 100 is clocked directly from the external source, with the Xtal bypassed. In this mode VCO 120 is also bypassed. TCM1 and TCM2 are set to select the external clock source and REF1 and REF2 are don't care. In this mode assertion of RSTOn will cause the TRST PORTST[1:0], TST[1:0] and GPIO[3:0] to be latched.

[00345] In both normal operation and TestOp mode, the device executes the first instruction from internal ROM and branches according to the boot selection indicated by GPIO[3:0] in accordance with Table 191.

The NAND FLASH is assumed to contain an SSFDC compliant file system. The boot ROM will search the NAND FLASH for logical block 4 (the lowest numbered logical block which is not used for file system tables across all NAND FLASH device sizes) and read the contents of logical block 4 into the beginning of microprocessor 101 internal SRAM. The memory map of microprocessor 101 is set to mode 1 (with microprocessor 101 internal SRAM at physical address 0) and microprocessor 101 branches to zero, causing the first instruction of the NAND FLASH code to be executed.

[00347] The external EEPROM preferably contains a byte stream including a boot code block. The boot code block is read from the EEPROM into the beginning of microprocessor 101 internal SRAM. The memory map of microprocessor 101 is set to mode 1 (with microprocessor 101 internal SRAM at

108

physical address 0) and microprocessor 101 is branches to zero, causing the first instruction of the EEPROM boot code to be executed.

[00348] With respect to external memory, the memory map of microprocessor 101 is set to mode 2 (with the nCSO memory space at physical address 0) and microprocessor 101 branches to zero, causing the first instruction of the external memory to be executed.

[00349] Since UART is used during boot-up, one PLL is locked such that the UART has a good clock source. The selected PLL will be configured for a "standard" speed and microprocessor 101 implements a delay until the PLL is locked. Preferably, the UART will be configured for 115,200 baud, 8-N-1. A "<" is sent to the serial port. Then, 8K bytes are read from the serial port into the beginning of microprocessor 101 internal SRAM. Then, a ">" is sent to the serial port. The memory map of microprocessor 101 is then set to mode 1 (with the internal microprocessor 101 SRAM at physical address 0) and microprocessor 101 branches to zero, causing the first instruction read from the UART to be executed.

[00350] Since the NAND FLASH can also be accessed by the application running on Windows, the routines used by the boot ROM will be made available for application use. These routines will be APCS compliant Thumb code.

[00351] Also available in the boot ROM will be a routine to set the speed of the PLL and wait for it to lock. Again, this will be APCS compliant Thumb code.

[00352] For secure parts, the secure boot ROM will behave the exact same way, with the exception of looking for a secure kernel at the specified boot location. Depending upon the requirements of the security provider, it might not be possible to boot secure from all of the possible boot locations (specifically from the UART).

In the Clock test mode, GPIO[10:0] is driven by internal clocks: GPIO[0]=ARMCLK, GPIO[1]=HCLK, GPIO[2]=PCLK, GPIO[3]=DSPCLK, GPIO[4]=DSPMEMCLK, GPIO[5]=OSC32K, GPIO[6]=AUDCLK, GPIO[7]=LCDCLK, GPIO[8]=ADCCLK, GPIO[9]=UARTCLK, GPIO[10]=USBCLK. A similar function can be achieved by asserting CUSDAT[10:0] (GPIOINTEN register bk[26:16]) to view these clocks in mentioned order in the other boot-up mode.

[00354] In the ARM-off mode, clocks operate as normal but the microprocessor 101 core will be off. This test will allow the use of the on-chip TIC controller to access the internal AHB. In this test mode the various internal devices are accessible for running specialized test functions.

[00355] The Drive All Float Test causes all device pins that can be an output to transition to a high impedance state. All input buffers, except those necessary to maintain the test function are disabled. All pad pull-up and pull-down functions are controlled by the TST[0] pin; when TST[0] is low all pad pull resistors are turned off, and when TST[0] is high the pad pull resistors are active. System 100 enters its lowest possible power dissipation state and can be used

for IDDO testing and to testing for parametric leakage and EOS damage. This test mode is used to test the pad pull resistor state and strength. Normal device operation is disabled.

[00356] The Drive All High Test causes all output capable pins to drive to a logic high level. All internal pull-up and pull-downs are turned off. This test mode is used to test output pad pull-up driver strength. Normal device operation is disabled.

[00357] The Drive All Low Test causes all output capable pins to drive to a logic low level. All internal pull-up and put-downs are turned off. This test mode is used to test output pad pull-down driver strength. Normal device operation is disabled.

[00358] The XOR Tree Test causes all pins that can be operated as an input to be configured as an input and connected into an XOR tree. The end of the tree is driven out on the TDO pin. Since the tree is composed of XOR logic gates, the pin order in the tree does not affect the test results. The tree functions as an even parity generator. The connectivity and input trip level of all input buffers can be tested by toggling one input pin at a time and observing that the tree output on TDO changes state when the input is changed. Normal device operation is disabled. The pins included in XOR tree are: WAKEUP, UARTRXD, TST\_1 TREQB, TST\_0\_TREQA, TMS, TDI, TCK, TACK\_TRSTn, SPIRXD, RSTOn, PRSTn, LCDMCLK\_GPIO\_15, LCDFRM\_GPIO\_14, LCDDD\_3 GPIO\_11, LCDDD\_2 GPIO\_10, LCDDD\_. 1 GPIO\_9, LCDDD\_0\_GPIO\_8,

LCDCL2\_GPIO\_12, LCDCL1\_GPIO\_13, GPIO\_7\_LCDDD\_7, GPIO\_6\_LCDDD\_6, GPIO\_5\_LCDDD\_5, GPIO\_4 LCDDD\_4, GPIO\_3, GPIO\_2, GPIO\_1, GPIO\_0, EXTCLKI, EEDAT, EECLK, DA-9. DA\_8, DA\_7, DA\_6, DA-5, DA-4, DA\_3, DA\_2, DA\_1, DA-15, MN-14, DA-13, DA-12, DA \_11, DA\_10, DA-0, DAISCLK, DAIRX, DAIMCLK, DAILRCK, A12CD PORTST1, ASSIC PORTSTO, AD \_9\_GPIO\_25, AD 8\_GPIO\_24, AD\_7\_GPIO\_23, AD\_6\_GPIO\_22, AD 5 GPIO 21, AD\_4\_GPIO\_20, AD\_19 GPIO\_19, AD\_18\_GPIO\_18, AD\_17 GPIO 17, AD 16 GPIO 16, AD 15 GPIO\_31, AD\_14\_GPIO\_30, AD 13\_GPIO\_29, AD\_12\_GPIO\_28, AD\_11\_GPIO\_27, AD\_10\_GPIO\_26. As a general concept of security, once the chip is determined as a [00359] fuse-blown security chip, all the debugging features (JTAG/TIC) are disabled unless microprocessor 101 code is authorized to enable them. Microprocessor 101 is the only resource that determines which other resources can access selected sections of the chip. In a security chip, accesses to the memory space are protected by configuration bits, setting them allows the access from microprocessor 101 only in supervisor mode. The general security code will be programmed in microprocessor 101 supervisor mode. FIGURE 21 is a diagram of the pin-out for system 100, as [00360]

[00361] Although the invention has been described with reference to a specific embodiments, these descriptions are not meant to be construed in a

packaged in a 128-pin QFP package. The pins are described in Table 193.

limiting sense. Various modifications of the disclosed embodiments, as well as alternative embodiments of the invention will become apparent to persons skilled in the art upon reference to the description of the invention. It should be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the conception and the specific embodiment disclosed may be readily utilized as a basis for modifying or designing other structures for carrying out the same purposes of the present invention. It should also be realized by those skilled in the art that such equivalent constructions do not depart from the spirit and scope of the invention as set forth in the appended claims.

[00362] It is therefore, contemplated that the claims will cover any such modifications or embodiments that fall within the true scope of the invention.

**Tables** 

Table 1: LCDCON1 (LCD Control Register 1, ARM Addr= 0x6000\_1000)

Name	Bit Field	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
GSMD	[31:30]	00	R/W	Gray Scale Mode Bits; enabled for all
				bit/pixel settings:
		1		"bx0": 1 bit per pixel or sub-pixel in the
				frame buffer;
				"b01": 2 bits per pixel or sub-pixel in the
				frame buffer;
				"b11": 4 bits per pixel or sub-pixel in the
				frame buffer.
ACPreScale	[29:25]	0x00	R/W	Toggles MCLK (high-to-low or low-to-high)
				transition after (n+1) counts of the falling
				edge of CL1. "n" is the value programmed
				for this bit field. The delay of MCLK at the
				pin is relative to the falling edge of CL1. (
				value of zero is illegal and MCLK is not
;				generated.)
AHBCIkPreSc	[24:19]	0x00	R/W	AHB Clock Pre-Scale. Divides the AHB
ale				clock by (n+1), where "n" is the value in
				this bit field. The output of this divider is
				the pixel clock. (A value of zero is illegal
				and results in no pixel clock.)

LineLength	[18:13]	0x00	R/W	Number of dots per line (including sub-
				dots if color).
				LineLength=(#dotx_per_line/16)-1
		1		#dots_per_line=(LineLength+1)*16. This
				register has a granularity of 16-ots (i.e. 16-
				dots = 1 unit of this bit field). andId is used
				internally for line-to-line logic.
FBSize	[12:0]	0x0000	R/W	Frame Buffer Size. FBSize =
				(Total_#bits/128) -
				#QDWORDS in FB = FBSize + 1. (1
				QDWORD = 16 bytes) #DWORDS in FB =
				(FBSize + 1)* 4. #bytes in FB = (FBSize +
		5		1)* 16. #bits in FB = (FBSize + 1)* 128
				buffer to support a particular display
				resolution. After this number of QDWRDs
				have been read from the frame buffer, the
				LCD controller will reset to FBADDR and
				read pixels for the first line of the next
				frame into the FIFO. This bit field will be
				used internally for frame-to-frame logic.
Reserved	[31:13]	0x00000	RO	Reserved. Writes have no effect on this
				field.

LCDClkSel	(12)	0	R/W	LCD panel interface logic clock select.
	()			This bit chooses the clock source for the
				LCD panel interface logic (FIFO read, pixel
				datapath and panel clock generation.)
<u> </u>				Setting this bit to "0" chooses the
				microprocessor AHB bus clock (HCLK) as
				the panel interface logic clock. Setting this
				bit to "1" selects the LCDCLK from one of
				the PLL outputs in System Clock Control
				block.
FIFOThrsh	[11:8]	Ox5	R/W	FIFO Threshold. When the number of valid
				FIFO locations falls to (FIFOThrsh + 1) or
				less, the LCD controller signals its Bus
				Master to fill the FIFO. The maximum
				value for FIFO-Thrsh is 15d.
Reserved	[7:6]	00	RO	Reserved. Writes have no effect on this
				field.
SubDotPortS	[5]	0	RW	Sub-Dot Interface Port Swap - for color
wap				dots. Bits "DotPortSwap" and
				"SubDotPortSwiz" can be set together or
				exclusively from each other.
				"1" = Red and Blue sub-dots of a color
				pixel swap locations at the pins.
				"0" = No swapping.

- · · ·	T = 45		D04/	Dat lata da on Dark Corinnla, Dita
DotPortSwiz	[4]	0	RW	Dot Interface Port Swizzle. Bits
				"DotPortSwiz" and "SubDotPortSwap" can
				be set together or exclusively from each
				other. 1" = Least least significant dot at
				the interface, relative to the frame buffer, is
				mapped to the most significant pin of the
				bus interface. Most significant dot at the
				interface, relative to the frame buffer, is
:				mapped to the least significant pin of the
				bus interface. "0" = No Swizzle
PortSize	[3:2]	00	RW	Data Bus Interface Port Size
				"00" = 4-bits (D[3:0])
				"01" = 8-bits (D[7:0])
				"10" = 2-bits (D[1:0])
				"11" = 1-bit (D[0])
EOFrmCti	[1]	0	RW	End of Frame Control.
	1			"1" = FRM encompasses the last line
				CL1.
				"0" = FRM encompasses the first line
				CL1.

LCDEN	[0]	0	RW	LCD Enable Bit.
				"1" = Enables the LCD controller to
				Function internally (interface not enabled
				at the pins at this point). Register bit GPIO
				Mux Selector Register must also be set
				appropriately to enable the LCD interface
				signals to the pins.
				"0" = Sets the state of the LCD interface
				internal signals to Os to meet the power off
				requirements of the panel. Then, drives
				the input to the AHB clock pre-scaler to a
				known state to conserve power – LCD
				controller is totally idle - LCD interface
	į.			signals still 0s.

Table 3: FBADDR (Frame Buffer Start Address, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1008)

Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description
FBADD	[31:4]	0X0C00_000	R/W	Frame Buffer Start Address. The frame
R		0		buffer is re-locatable on QDWRD
				boundaries. At the end of every display
				frame, the LCD controller's Bus Master
				address is set back to FBADDR.
Reserve	[3:0]	0x0	RO	Reserved.
d				

WSM Docket No.

Table 4: PALLSW (Palette Least Significant Word, microprocessor 101 Addr = Ox6000\_100C)

Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description
PalLoc7	[31:28]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 7
PalLoc6	[27:24]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 6
PalLoc5	[23:20]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 5
PalLoc4	[19:16]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 4
PalLoc3	[15:12]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 3
PalLoc2	[11:8]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 2
PalLoc1	[7:4]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 1
PalLoc0	[3:0]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 0

Table 5: PALMSW (Palette Most Significant Word, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1010)

PalLoc12	[19:16]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 12
PalLoc11	[15:12]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 11
PalLoc10	[11:8]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 10
PalLoc9	[7:4]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 9
PalLoc8	[3:0]	0x0	R/W	Value for palette location 8

Table 6: FRMPAT1A (Frame Pattern 1A, Addr = 0x6000\_1014)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #1 Register. This register holds the first 4 pattern register						
bytes (0 through 3) used in the "1 of 9" gray scale generator						
Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description		
FRMPAT1_3 [31:24] 0x00 R/W Pattern 3 when a palette location						

WSM Docket No.

				value = 0x1
FRMPAT1_2	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 2 when a palette location value = 0x1
FRMPAT1_1	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 1 when a palette location value = 0x1
FRMPAT1_0	[7:0]	0X00	R/W	Pattern 0 when a palette location value = 0x1

Table 7: FRMPAT1B (Frame Pattern 18, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1018)

Frame Rate Modu	Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #1 Register. This register holds the 4th through 7th					
pattern register by	tes used ir	n the "1 of 9" gr	ay scal	e generator shown in Figure 23.		
Name	Bit	Reset	Туро	Description		
	Field	Value				
FRMPAT1_7	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 7 when a palette location		
				value = 0x1		
FRMPAT1_6	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 6 when a palette location		
				value = 0x1		
FRMPAT1_5	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 5 when a palette location		
				value = 0x1		
FRMPAT1_4	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 4 when a palette location		
				value = 0x1		

Table 8: FRMPATIC (Frame Pattern 1C, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_101C)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #1 Register. This register holds the byte 8 in the "1 of 9"

WSM Docket No.

gray scale gener	ator			
Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description
Decembed			RO	Reserved. Writes have no effect on
Reserved	[31:8]	0x000000	RO	this field.
FRMPAT1_8	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 8 when a palette location value = 0x1

Table 9: FRMPAT2A (Frame Pattern 2A, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1020)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #2 Register. This register holds the first 4 pattern						
register bytes (0 through 3) used in the "1 of 5" gray scale generator						
Name	Bit	Reset	7ypr	Description		
	Field	Value	а			
FRMPAT2_3	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 3 when a palette location		
				value = 0x2		
FRMPAT2_2	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 2 when a palette location		
				value = 0x2		
FRMPAT2_1	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 1 when a palette location		
				value = 0x2		
FRMPAT2_0	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 0 when a palette location		
				value - 0x2		

Table 10: FRMPAT2B (Frame Pattern 2B, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1024)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #2 Register. This register holds the last pattern register

WSM Docket No.

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
	Field			
Reserved	[31:8]	0x000000	RO	Reserved. Writes have no effect on this field.
FRMPAT2_4	[7:0]	0X00	R/W	Pattern 4 when a palette location value = 0x2

Table 11: FRMPAT3A (Frame Pattern 3A, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1028)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #3 Register. This register holds the first 4 pattern						
register bytes (0 through 3) used in the "4 of 15" gray scale generator						
Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description		
	Field	Value				
FRMPAT3_3	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 3 when a palette location		
				value = 0x3		
FRMPAT3_2	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 2 when a palette location		
				value = 0x3		
FRMPAT3_1	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 1 when a palette location		
				value = 0x3		
FRMPAT3_0	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 0 when a palette location		
				value = 0x3		

Table 12: FRMPAT3B (Frame Pattern 3B, ARM Addr = Ox6000\_102C)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #3 Register. This register holds the pattern register bytes

WSM Docket No.

Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description
FRMPAT3_7	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 7 when a palette location value = 0x3
FRMPAT3_6	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 6 when a palette location value = 0x3
FRMPAT3_5	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 5 when a palette location value = 0x3
FRMPAT3_4	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 4 when a palette location value = 0x3

Table 13: FRMPAT3C (Frame Pattern 3C, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1030)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #3 Register. This register holds the pattern register bytes						
(8 through 11) used in the "4 of 15" gray scale generator						
Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description		
FRMPAT3_B	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 11 when a palette location value = 0x3		
FRMPAT3_A	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 10 when a palette location value = 0x3		
FRMPAT3_9	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 9 when a palette location value = 0x3		
FRMPAT3_8	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 8 when a palette location		

WSM Docket No.

			value = 0x3

Table 14: FRMPAT3D (Frame Pattern 3D, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1034)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #3 Register. This register holds the last 3 pattern register							
bytes (12 through	bytes (12 through 14) used in the "4 of 15" gray scale generator						
Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description			
	Field	Value					
Reserved	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Reserved. Writes have no effect on			
				this field.			
FRMPAT3_E	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 14 when a palette location			
				value = 0x3			
FRMPAT3_D	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 13 when a palette location			
				value = 0x3			
FRMPAT3_C	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 12 when a palette location			
				value = 0x3			

Table 15: FRMPAT4A (Frame Pattern 4A, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1038)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #4 Register. This register holds the first 4 pattern						
register bytes (0 th	register bytes (0 through 3) used in the "3 of 9" gray scale generator					
Name Bit Reset Value Type Description						
	Field					
FRMPAT4_3	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 3 when a palette location		
				value = 0x4		
FRMPAT4_2	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 2 when a palette location		

				value = 0x4
FRMPAT4_1	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 1 when a palette location
				value = 0x4
FRMPAT4_0	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 0 when a palette location
				value = 0x4

Table 16: FRMPAT4B (Frame Pattern 4B, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_103C)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #4 Register. This register holds the pattern register bytes					
(4 through 7) used	in the "3 o	of 9" gray scale	genera	itor	
Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description	
	Field				
FRMPAT4_7	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 7 when a palette location	
				value = 0x4	
FRMPAT4_6	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 6 when a palette location	
				value = 0x4	
FRMPAT4_5	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 5 when a pabtte location	
				value = 0x4	
FRMPAT4_4	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 4 when a palette location	
				value = 00	

Table 17: FRMPAT4C (Frame Pattern 4C, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1040)

Frame Rate Modul	rame Rate Modulation Pattern #4 Register.			register holds the last pattern register	
byte (8) used in the "3 of 9" gray scale generator					
Name Bit Rsset Value Type Description					

	Field			
Reserved	[31:8]	0x000000	RO	Reserved. Writes have no effect on
				this field.
FRMPAT4_8	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 8 when a palette location
				value = 0x4

Table 18: FRMPAT5A (Frame Pattern 5A, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1044)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #5 Register. This register holds the first 4 pattern							
register bytes (0 tl	register bytes (0 through 3) used in the "2 of 5" gray scale generator						
Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description			
	Field	Value					
FRMPAT5_3	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 3 when a palette location			
				value = 0x5			
FRMPAT5_2	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 2 when a palette location			
				value = 0x5			
FRMPAT5_1	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 1 when a palette location			
				value = 0x5			
FRMPAT5_0	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 0 when a palette location			
				value = 0x5			

Table 19: FRMPAT5B (Frame Pattern 5B, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1048)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #5 Register. This register holds the last pattern register						
byte (4) used in the "2 of 5" gray scale generator						
Name Bit Reset Type Description						

WSM Docket No.

	Field	Value.		
Reserved	[31:8]	0x000000	RO	Reserved. Writes have no effect on
				this field.
FRMPAT5_4	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 4 when a palette location
				value = 0x5

## Table 20: FRMPAT6A (Frame Pattern 6A, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_104C)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #6 Register. This register holds the first 4 pattern register bytes (0 through 3) used in the "4 of 9" gray scale generator Bit Reset Value Type Description Name Field R/W Pattern 3 when a palette location 0x00 [31:24] FRMPAT6\_3 value = 0x6Pattern 2 when a palette location 0x00 R/W FRMPAT6\_2 [23:16] value = 0x6Pattern 1 when a palette location 0x00 R/W FRMPAT6 1 [15:8] value = 0x60x00 R/W Pattern 0 when a palette location FRMPAT6 0 [7:0] value = 0x6

#### Table 21: FRMPAT6B (Frame Pattern 6B, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1050)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #6 Register. This register holds the pattern register bytes						
(4 through 7) used in the "4 of 9" gray scale generator						
Name Bit Reset Value Type Description						

	Field			
FRMPAT6_7	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 7 when a palette location value = 0x6
FRMPAT6_6	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 6 when a palette location value = 0x6
FRMPAT6_5	[15:8]	0X00	R/W	Pattern 5 when a palette location value = 0x6
FRMPAT6_4	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 4 when a palette location value = 0x6

## Table 22: FRMPAT6C (Frame Pattern 6C, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1054)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #6 Register. This register holds the last pattern register						
byte (8) used in t	byte (8) used in the "4 of 9" gray scale generator					
Name Bit Reset Type Description						
	Field	Value				
Reserved	[31:8]	0x000000	R/W	Reserved. Writes have no effect on		
				this field.		
FRMPAT6_8	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 8 when a palette location		
				value = 0x6		

## Table 23: FRMPAT7 (Frame Pattern 7, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1058)

Frame Rate Modulation Pattern #7 and 8 Register. This register holds the pattern						
register bytes (0 and 1) used in the "1 of 2" gray scale generator						
Name Bit Reset Type Description						

WSM Docket No.

	Field	Value		
Reserved	[31:16]	0x0000	RW	Reserved. Writes have no effect on this field.
FRMPAT7_1	[15:8]	0x00	RW	Pattern 1 when a palette location value = 0x7 or 0x8
FRMPAT7_0	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Pattern 0 when a palette location value = 0x7 or 0x8

Table 24: FIFOWrCtl (LCD FIFO Test Write Control, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1080)

LCD FIFO test mode write control register. The LCD FIFO is accessible via this register only when the LCDEN bit of the LCDCON2 register is 0. When LCDEN is 1, the FIFO is inaccessible by bus masters, and only the LCD controller internal logic has access to the FIFO.

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
	Field	Value		
Reserved	[31:5]	0x0000000	RO	Reserved. Writes have no effect on
				this field.
FIFOWriteEnabl	[4]	0	RW	When this bit is set, the FIFO word at
е				FIFOWrAddress will be written w/ the
				value {FIFOBit33WrData[0],
Address				FIFOWrData[31:0]}.
FIFOWrAddress	[3:0]	0x0	R/W	Selectes which of the 16 LCD FIFO
				locations will be written when
				FIFOWriteEnable is set.

Table 25: FIFOWrData (LCD FIFO Test Write Data, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1084)

LCD FIFO test mode write data register. The LCD FIFO is accessible via this register only when the LCDEN bit of the LCDCON2 register is 0. When LCDEN is 1, the FIFO is inaccessible by bus masters, and only the LCD controller internal logic has access to the FIFO.

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
	Field	Value		
FIFOWrData	[31:0]	0x0000000	R/W	Data written to bits [31:0] of LCD FIFO
				location FIFOWrAddress) when
				FIFOWriteEnable is 1.

Table 26: FIFOBit33WrData (LCD FIFO Test Write Bit33 Data, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1088)

LCD FIFO test mode write data register for bit 33 of the FIFO data word. The LCD FIFO is accessible via this register only when the LCDEN bit of the LCDCON2 register is 0. When LCDEN is 1, the FIFO is inaccessible by bus masters, and only the LCD controller internal logic has access to the FIFO.

Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description
FIFOBit33WrData	[0]	0	R/W	Data written to bit [32] of LCD FIFO location [FIFOWrAddress] when FIFOWriteEnable is 1. The FIFO is 33 bits wide.

Table 27: FIFORdCtl (LCD FIFO Test Read Control, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_108C)

WSM Docket No.

LCD FIFO test mode read control register. The LCD FIFO is accessible via this register only when the LCDEN bit of the LCDCON2 register is 0. When LCDEN is 1, the FIFO is inaccessible by bus masters, and only the LCD controller internal logic has access to the FIFO.

Name	Bit	Reset	Types	Description
	Field	Value		
Reserved	[31:5]	0x0000000	R/W	Reserved. Writes have no effect on
				this field.
FIFORdCIkEnable	[4]	0	R/W	When this bit is set, the FIFO
				location at FIFORdAddress will be
				readable from the FIFORdData and
				FIFOBit33RdData registers. This bit
				also enables the FIFO read clk.
FIFORdAddress	[3:0]	0x0	R/W	Selects which of the 16 LCD FIFO
				locations will be read when
				FIFORdClkEnable is set.

Table 28: FIFORdData (LCD FIFO Test Read Data, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1090)

LCD FIFO test mode read data register. The LCD FIFO is accessible via this register only when the LCDEN bit of the LCDCON2 register is 0. When LCDEN is 1, the FIFO is inaccessible by bus masters, and only the LCD controller internal logic has access to the FIFO, and this register reads back zeros.

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description	
	Field	Value			

1125-CS

132

FIFOWrData	[31:0]	0x0000000	R/W	Data read from bits [31:0] of LCD
				FIFO location [FIFORdAddress) when
			ļ	FIFORdClkEnable is 1.

Table 29: FIFOBit33RdData (LCD FIFO Test Write Bit33 Data, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_1094)

LCD FIFO test mode read data register for bit 33 of the FIFO data word. The LCD FIFO is accessible via this register only when the LCDEN bit of the LCDCON2 register is 0. When LCDEN is 1, the FIFO is inaccessible by bus masters, and only the LCD controller internal logic has access to the FIFO, and this register reads back zeros.

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Desedptjon
	Field	Value		
FIFOBit33WrData	[0]	0	RW	Data read from bit [32] of LCD FIFO
				location [FIFORdAddress] when
				FIFORdClkEnable is 1. The FIFO is
				33 bits wide.

Table 30: List of DMA Channel Requests

	Channel I	Channel 2
Request 1	Disabled	Used by ARM Software
Request 2	Used by ARM Software	Disabled
Request 3	Disabled	Disabled
Request 4	Disabled	Disabled

WSM Docket No.

Table 30: List of DMA Channel Requests

Table 31: DMA Channel 1 Source Address Pointer (DMASRC1, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0000)

Name	Bit Field	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
DMASRC1	[31:0]	0	R/W	DMA channel 1 source address
				pointer. Must be word aligned. Read
				returns the internal current source
				address pointer instead of written value
				which RDTSTEN1=0 in DMACONT1
				register. Setting RDTSTEN1=1, read
				returns the written value of DMASRC1.

Table 32: DMA Channel 1 Destination Address Pointer (DMADESTI, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0004)

Name	Bit Field	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		

-00

Table 32: DMA Channel 1 Destination Address Pointer (DMADESTI, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0004)

134

DMADEST1	[31:0]	0	R/W	DMA channel 1 destination address
				pointer. Must be word aligned. Read
				returns the internal current destination
				address pointer instead of written value
				which RDTSTEN1=0 in DMACONTI
				register. Setting RDTSTEN1=1, read
				returns the written value of
				DMADEST1.

Table 33: DMA Channel 1 Transfer Counter (DMATC1, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0008

Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description
Reserved	[31:16]			Unknown during read.
DMATC1	[15:0]	0	R/W	DMA channel 1 transfer counter up to one less than 64 K transfer. Read returns the number of transfer remaining.

Table 34: DMA Channel 1 Control Register (DMACONTI, ARM Addr = OX6000\_OOOC

Name	Bit Field	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		

WSM Docket No.

	1013	10	DAA/	Source/Destination register read test
RDTSTEN1	[31]	0	R/W	
				enable. When clear, read
				source/destination address register of
				channel 1 returns internal value instead
				of written value. By setting this bit, it
				returns the written value. I
Reserved	[31:9]			
INT	[8]	0	RW	When set, generates interrupt to ARM if
				INTEN=1.
INTEN	[7]	0	RW	When set, the INT bit will generate
				interrupt to ARM.
RES(1:0]	[6:5]	0	RW	Source request for channel 1.
DDEC	[4]	0	R/W	(DDES:DINC]=00, no address change
				[DDES:DINC]=10, address decrement
				[DDES:DINC]=01, address increment
				[DDES:DINCj=11, no address change
DINC	[3]	0	R/W	see above
SDEC	[2]	0	RNV	[SDES:SINCI=00, no address change
				[SOES:SINC]=10, address decrement
				[SDES:SINCI=01, address increment
				[SDES:SINC]=11, no address change
SINC	[1]	0	RW	See above.
EN	[0]	0	R/W	When set, enables DMA channel.
				When clear, suspend DMA channel.

1125-CS

136

Table 35: DMA Channel 2 Source Address Pointer (DMASRC2, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0010)

Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description
DMASRC2	[31:0]	0	R/W	DMA channel 2 source address pointer.  Must be word aligned. Read returns the internal current source address pointer instead of written value which RDTSTEN2=0 in DMACONT2 register. Setting RDTSTEN2=1, read returns the written value of DMASRC2.

Table 36: DMA Channel 2 Destination Address Pointer (DMADEST2, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0014)

Name	Bit Field	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		

DMADEST2	[31:0]	0	R/W	DMA channel 2 destination address
				pointer. Must be word aligned. Read
				returns the internal current destination
				address pointer instead of written value
				which RDTSTEN2=0 in DMACONT2
				register. Setting ROTSTEN2=1, read
				returns the written value of OMASRC2.
	1	}		

Table 37: DMA Channel 2 Transfer Counter (DMATC2, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0018)

Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description
Reserved	[31:16]			
DMATC2	[15:0]	0	RW	DMA channel 2 transfer counter up to one less than 64 K transfer. Read returns the number of transfer remaining.

Table 38: DMA Channel 2 Control Register (DMACONT2, ARM Addr = Ox6000\_001C)

Name	Bit Field	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		

RDTSTEN2	[31]	0	R/W	Source/Destination register read test
				enable. When clear, read
				source/destination address register of
				channel 2 returns internal value instead
				of written value. By setting this bit, it
				returns the written value.
Reserved	[30:9]			
INT	[8]	0	RW	When set, generates interrupt to ARM
				if INTEN=1
INTEN	[7]	0	RW	When set, the INT bit will generate
				interrupt to ARM.
RES(1:0]	[6:5]	0	RW	Source request for channel 2.
DDEC	[4]	0	R/W	[DDES:DINC]=00, no address change
				[DDES:DINC]=10. address decrement
				[DDES:DINC]=01, address increment
				[DDES:DINC]=11, no address change
DINC	[3]	0	RW	see above
SDEC	[2]	0	R/W	[SDES:SINC]=00, no address change
				[SDES:SINC]=10, address decrement
				[SDES:SINC]=01, address increment
				[SDES:SINC]=11, no address change
SINC	[1]	0	R/W	See above.
EN	[0]	0	R/W	When set, enables DMA channel.
				When clear, suspend DMA channel.

Table 39: DMA Channel 1 TimeOut Register (DMATIMEOUTI, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0020)

Name	Bit Field	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
Reserved	[31:16]			
T01	[15:0]	OxFFFF	R/W	The value defines a maximum number
				of transfers channel 1 can continuously
				perform after which channel 1 has to
				give up the permission to channel 2.

# Table 40: DMA Channel 2 TimeOut Register (DMATIMEOUT2, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0024)

Name	Bit Field	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
Reserved	[31:16]			
T02	[15:0]	OxFFFF	R/W	The value defines a maximun number of transfers channel 2 can continuously perform after which channel 2 has to give up the permission to channel 1.

# Table 41: DMA Global TimeOut Register (DMATIMEOUTG~ ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0028)

Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Туре	Description

1125-CS

140

TOG	[31:0]	OxFFFFFF	R/W	The value defines a maximum number
į		F		of transfers including channel 1 and 2
			ļ	DMA can perform on the AHB bus,
				after which DMA has to give up the
				AHB bus for one cycle and re-issue the
				AHB bus request again in order to
				resume the remaining transfers.

Table 42: ARM DMA Channel 1 Request Resister (DMAARMREGI, ARM Addr = OX6000\_002C)

Name	Bit Field	Reset Value	Type	Description
Reserved	[31:11]			
ARMREQ1	[0]	0	RW	By setting the bit, ARM request/enable the DMA channel 1 service. The bit will be automatically cleared by hardware after DMA gets the AHB bus and starts channel 1 transfer.

Table 43: ARM DMA Channel 2 Request Register (DMAARMREG2, ARM Addr ≈ 0x6000\_0030)

Name	Bit Field	Reset	Туре	Description
	!	Value		
Reserved	[31:11]			

WSM Docket No.

Table 43: ARM DMA Channel 2 Request Register (DMAARMREG2, ARM Addr = 0x6000\_0030)

[0]	0	R/W	By setting the bit ARM request/enable
			the DMA channel 2 service. The bit will
			be automatically cleared by hardware
			after DMA gets the AHB bus and starts
			channel 2 transfer.
	[0]	[0] 0	[0] 0 R/W

MIssing 44 and 45

Table 46: ARM\_DSP\_MASK Register (ARM Addr: Ox600D\_0200)

Name	Bits	Default	Туре	Description
DIR015-MASK:	[31:17]	0	R/W	Mask for DIRQ15-1 for ARM. Clearing
DIRQ1-MASK				the bit, mask off the corresponding
				DSP interrupt source from sending
				request to ARM.
	[16:0]			RESERVED READ VALUE: 0

Table 47: DSP\_INT\_MASK Register (ARM Addr. 0x8000\_0204)

Bits	Default	Туре	Description
[31:16]			RESERVED READ VALUE: 0
[15:1]		R/W	Mask for DIRQ 15-1 for DSP Clearing the bit,
			masks off the corresponding DSP interrupt
			source from sending request to DSP.
ro1			RESERVED READ VALUE: 0
	[31:16]	[31:16]	[31:16] R/W

WSM Docket No.

Table 48: SW\_INT\_GEN Register (ARM Addr: Ox800D\_0208)

Name	Bits	Default	Туре	Description
SW_GEN_INT	[31:17]	0	R/W	When set, lets ARM core interrupt DSP via DSP interrupt [15:1] using the lower bits of this register.
	[16]			RESERVED READ VALUE: 0
SW_INT15- SW INT1	[15:1]	0	R/W	Software Interrupt values for DSP interrupt 15-1. When the bit is set and corresponding SW_GEN_INT[x] bit is set as well, the interrupt generated by DSP hardware peripheral will be ignored.
	[0]			RESERVED READ VALUE: 0

## Table 49: FIQ\_INT\_MASK Register (ARM Addr: Ox80VD\_020C)

Name	Bits	Default	Type	Description
				L

FIQ_MASK_31:FI	[31:0]	0	R/W	All 32 interrupts listed on ARM
Q MASK_0				IRQ[31:0) side can be selected to
			[	generate ARM FIQ. Clearing the bit,
				mask off the corresponding interrupt
				source from generating FIQ. ARM Int[1]
				(the software-only self-generated
				interrupt) is not affected by
				FIQ_MASK_1.

## Table 50: Interrupt map for the ARM IRQs and FIQs

Name	Mapped to:
ROO	Clocks Control Interrupts (SYSCON)
R01	ARM controlled self-generated interrupt
RQ2	Logic 'OR' of 4 IPC interrupts
IR03	GPIO interrupt
IR04	Logic "OR' of 2 DMA interrupt
IR05	Logic 'OR' of 6 interrupts from three Timers
IRQ6	RTC interrupt
IRQ7	Logic OR' of 2 USB interrupts
IRQB	Logic 'OR' of 4 DART interrupts
IRC19	12C interrupt
IR010	Logic "OR" of 3 SPI interrupts
IRQ11	ADC Interrupt
IR012	ARM Wakeup from Sleep Mode Interrupt. Generated any rising edge of

	GPIO [3:O] or falling edge of GPIO [7:4] during ARM Steep Mode.
IR013	Reserved
IR014	Reserved
IR015	Reserved
IR016	Reserved
IR017-31	DSP Interupts from DSPINTI (IRQ17) b DSPINT15 (IRQ 31)

Table 51: Interrupt map for the DSP Interrupts

Name	Mapped to:
DSPint0	Reserved for DSP embedded 12C port only for debugging purpose.
DSPint1	DSP debugger Interrupt
DSPint2	Main PLL (PLLO) out-of-lock interrupt
DSPint3	Second PLL (PLL1) out-of-lock interrupt
DSPint4	Digital Audio input full interrupt
DSPint5	Digital Audio output empty interrupt
DSPint6	Digital Audio input half-full interrupt
DSPint7	Digital Audio output half-empty interrupt
DSPint8	Digital Audio input FS (sample rate) interrupt
DSPint9	Digital Audio output FS interrupt
DSPint10	DSP STCTmer interrupt
DSPint11	ARM Attention 1 (ARM is able to interrupt DSP using proper SW_INT_GEN
	setting). No harware source is connected to this interrupt.)
DSPint12	ARM Attention 2 (ARM is able to interrupt DSP using proper SW_INT_GEN
	setting). No harware source is connected to this interrupt)

DSPint13	ARM Attention 3 (ARM is able to interrupt DSP using proper SW_INT_GEN
	setting). No harware source is connected to this interrupt.)
DSPint14	ARM Attention 4 (ARM is able to interrupt DSP using proper SW_INT_GEN
	setting). No harware source is conned to this interrupt.)
DSPint15	ARM Attention 5 (ARM is able to interrupt DSP using proper SW_INT_GEN
	setting). No hardware source is connected to this interrupt.)

Table 52: ADC Control/Status Register (32 bits,ARM addr:0004)

Name	Bits	Description	Default Value	Read/write
	[31:10]	Reserved.	0	
COUNTERLATCH	[9]	Latch the value of the counter	0	R/W
		to the data register in test		
		mode.		
COUNTER RST	[8]	Reset counter.	0	R/W
TEST_MODE	[7]	When 1, ADC runs in test	0	R/W
		mode.		
TEST-CLOCK	[6]	When the ADC is in test	0	R/W
		mode, this bit can be flipped		
		manually to run the counter.		
CLBR_MODE	[5]	1'b1: calibration before every	0	R/W
		A/D conversion 1'b0: one-		
		time calibration when ADC-		
		EN is activated		

CLBR_READY	[4]	When offset calibration is over, this bit is set to 1.	0	R
ADC-EN	[3]	ENABLE flag for the ADC.  When 0, the ADC is in power down mode	0	R/W
ADC-DATA- READY	[2]	When this bit is 1, the data in data register is ready for DSP to read. ARM will set this bit to 0 every time when ARM read data from data register.	0	R
ADC_INTEN	[1]	Interrupt enable. When 1.  ADC could send interrupt to  ARM.	0	R/W
ADC_IN_SEL	[0]	ADC input source select:  1b1=Vin1  1'b0=Vtn0	0	R/W

### TABLE 53. ADC DATA Register(32 bits, ARM addr: 0000)

Name	Bits	Description	Default Value	Read/Write
	[31:8]	Set to 0.		
ADC DATA	[7:0]	Sample value.	0	R

### TABLE 54. ADC Divider Value Register(32bits, ARM addr: 0008)

Name	Bits	Description	Default	Read/Write	
					,

WSM Docket No.

			Value	
ADC_DV	[31:0]	Set the divider value to treat	0	R/W
		the sample clock from ADC		
		clock generated in clock		
		manager.		

No Table Number Clock Control Register 1 (CMCTL1) for PLL1 (ARM Addr: 0x8007\_0000)

Name	Bits	Default	Туре	Description
lockb_intl	[31]		R	Sticky bit for lockb_int. This is set when the
				lockb_int is asserted when the pll looses lock and
				Men is set. Can be reset by writing 0. Rst value 0
	[30:28]	0		Reserved.
lpcmp1	[27]	0	RW	PLL fdbk loop complete for testing. Rst viol = 0;
				when 1, selects vco as fdbk src. Even ff tan is 1.
	[28:24]	0		Reserved.
LOCKBI	[23]		R	PLL lock indicator. Low when PLL is locked.
VBLOCK1	[22]		R	VCO Bias lock indicator. Goes low when VCO
				bias current calibration sequence has completed.
HIGH	[21]		R	High Frequency indicator flag for VCO bias
				calibration.
				0: VCO frequency less than reference frequency
				1: VCO frequency greater than reference

WSM Docket No.

				frequency
LOW	[20]		R	Low Frequency indicator flag for VCO bias
				calibration.
;				1: VCO frequency less than reference frequency
				0: VCO frequency greater than reference
				frequency
HILO_VALID	[19]		R	When this bit toggles, a new measurement is
			ļ.	taken to compare the VCO frequency with the
				reference frequency; used in VCO bias calibration
VBLOCK_RST	[18]	0	R/W	When set, initiates the calibration circuits and
				clears the VBLOCK bit if necessary. In order to
				perform bias calibration, assert this bit high and
				de-assert after the HILO_VALID bit toggles. In
				normal operation, this bit should be low.
	[17]			Reserved
VC081	[18:11]	Ox1C	RW	VCO Bias value. Controls bias current to the VCO.
				The reset value is Ox 1 C. It can not be written
				when BLEN=1
TCM1	[10]	0	RW	Test mode. Drives D1 and D2 dividers with DSP
		ļ		clock instead of VCO output. Gives controlled test
				visibility for all dividers
PWRDN	[9]	0	RW	PLL Power down mode, Default 0
LKIEN	[8]	0	RW	PLL lock interrupt enable. When set, a rising edge
				of LOCK generates an interrupt to the DSP

BLEW	[7]	0	RW	Bias lock enable. When set, enables VCO bias
				calibration sequence.
CP_TRI	[8]	0	R/W	Tristate Charge Pump. When set, it tristates the
				VCO charge pump, and allows characterization of
				the VCO.
DSPBYP	[5]	0	R/W	Routes DSPCLK to AUDIO Clocks when set.
EXTEND	[4]	0	RW	When set, it switches on an onset bias current that
				allows the VCO to run -20MHz faster than the
				current VCOB setting.
BIAS TST	[3]	0	R/W	BIAS Test Enable for VCO bias current. When set,
				it muxes out the bias current to FLT2 pin for
				testing purposes
VCOENI	[2]	0	R/W	VCO Enable. When dear, VCO tuning voltage is set to its
				nominal value. When set, VCO is enabled to track
				tuning voltage changes.
RDSW1	[1]	0	R/W	Read switch. When cleared. reading M, N, G.
			-	HDTV, PDIV, MDIV, DSP- DIV or D values gives
				values written to modulo register. When set, read-
				ing M, N. G, HDTV, PDIV, MDIV, DSPDIV or D
				gives actual counter value for test visibility.
REF1	[0]	0	RW	Reference Clocks Source Selector:
				0: Reference Clock = on-chip 32KHz oscillator
				1: Reference Clocks - Ext clock
				<u> </u>

**PATENT** 

# ATTORNEY CLOCKET NO.

1125-CS

150

Table 55: Supporting Frequency and Dividers for PLL1

1-11-17-3	/ I I W / 3	(-n//\da s	1 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	EC/KU+	CONCHANT FILADTO K1/MH7) F SVSCI K/MH7 M1 N	F SYSCI K(MHz)	<b>M</b>		D1 G1 H1	7.	Ŧ
T_ref (KHZ)	I_ref (KHZ)   I_vco(MHZ)   I_rD(NHZ)   I_AUdOIN	(בהת)טק_ו	L Audelk	F3(N12)		-0100E1\(1\text{nil iz}\)	-		<u> </u>		:
			(MHz)								
32.768 147.456	11	32.768	24.576	48.000 3.6864		73.728	-	41500 6 40 2	9	40	2
32.768	158.073	32.768	22.582	44.105 3.6761	3.6761	79.037	-	4824 7 43 2	, ,	£3.	2
32.786	147.456	32.768	16.384	32.000 3.6864		73.728	_	4500 9 40 2	ი ი	<b>Q</b>	7

Table 56: Supporting Frequency and Dividers for PLL2

f_ref(KHz)	f_ref(KHz)  f_vco(MHz)  f_PD(KHz)  f_A	f_PD(KHz)	f_AudClk	FS(KHz)	f_UARTCLK2	FS(KHz) f_UARTCLK2   F_USBCLK   M2   N2	M2	N2	D5	D2 G2 H2	구 무
			(MHz)		(MHz)	(MHz)					
32.768 48.005	48.005	32.768	N/A	N/A	3.6927	48.005	-	1465	_	1 13 N/A	N/A
32.768 47.972	47.972	32.768	N/A	N/A	3.6902	47.972	7-	1464	-	13 N/A	N/A
32.768 47.940	47.940	32.768	N/A	N./A	3.6877	47.940	1	1463	-	13 N/A	N/A

Table 57: MCLK/HCLK/PCLK/DSPCLK frequencies

f_SYSCLK (MHz)	Divider Value	Frequency (MHz)
	(MCLKDIV/HCLKDIV/	(f_MCLK/f_HCLK/
	PCLKDIV/DSPCLKDIV)	f_PCLK/f_DSPCLK)
73.728	1	73.728
73.728	1.5	49.152
73.728	2	36.864
73.728	3	24.576
73.728	4	18.432
73.728	5	14.745
73.728	6	12.288
73.728	7	10.533
73.728	8	9.216
79.037	1	79.037
79.037	1.5	52.691
79.037	2	39.519
79.037	3	26.346
79.037	4	19.759
79.037	5	15.807
79.037	6	13.173
79.037	7	11.291
79.037	8	9.880

Table 59: Clock Control Register2 (CMCTL2) for PLL2 (ARM Addr: 0x8007\_0004)

Name	Bits	Default	Туре	Description
lockb_int2	31		R	Sticky bit for lockb int. This is set when the
				lockb_int is asserted when the PLL looses lock and
				Wen is set. Can be reset by writing 0. Rst value 0
	30:28	0		reserved. Read vat 3'b000
lpcmp2	27	0	RW	PLL fdbk loop complete for testing. Rst value=0,
				when VCO selects as feedback source
	26:24	0		reserved:read value Yb000
LOCKB2	23		R	PLL lock indicator. Low when PLL is locked.
VBLOCK2	22		R	VCO Bias lock indicator. Goes low when VCO bias
				current calibration sequence has completed
HIGH	21		R	High Frequency indicator flag for VCO bias
				calibration.
				0: VCO frequency less than reference frequency
				1: VCO frequency greater than reference frequency
LOW	20		R	Low Frequency indicator flag for VCO bias
				calibration.
				1: VCO frequency less than reference frequency
				0: VCO frequency greater than reference frequency
HILO-VALID	19		R	When this bit toggles, a new measurement is taken
				to compare the VCO frequency with the reference
				frequency; used in VCO bias calibration
VBLOCK_R	18	0	R/W	When set, it initiates the calibration circuits and
ST				clears the VBLOCK bit if necessary. In order to

		<del></del>		
				perform bias calibration, assert this bit high and de-
				assert after the HILO_VALID bit toggles. In normal
				operation, this bit should be low.
LCDSEL	17		R/W	Set source for LCD dk : 0 : VC01 1: VC02 Reset
				value 0
VCOB2	18:11	Ox11	R/W	VCO Bias value. Controls bias current to the VCO.
				The reset value is 0x11.
TCM2	10	0	R/W	Test mode. Drives D1 and D2 dividers with DSP
				clock instead of VCO output. Gives controlled test
				visibility for all dividers.
PWRDN	9	0	R/W	PLL power down mode, Default 1
LKIEN	8	0	R/W	PLL lock interrupt enable. When set, a rising edge
				of LOCK generates an interrupt to the DSP
BLEN2	7	0	R/W	Bias lock enable. When set, enables VCO bias
				calibration sequence.
CP TRI	6	0	RW	Tristate Charge Pump. When set, it tristates the
			ļ	VCO charge pump, and allows characterization of
				the VCO.
USBBYP	5	0	RWI	Route USBCLK to AudClk output. When USBBYP
				asserted, supersedes DSPBYP
EXTEND	4	0	R/W	When set, it switches on an offset bias current that
				allows the VCO to run -20MHz faster than the
				current VCO setting.
BIAS_TST	3	0	. RW	BIAS Test Enable for VCO bias current. When set,

				it muxes out the bias, current to FLT? pin for testing purposes
VCOEN2	2	0	R/W	VCO Enable. When clear, VCO tuning voltage is set to its nominal value. When set, VCO is enabled to track tuning voltage changes.
RDSW2	1	0	RW	Read switch. When cleared, reading M, N, CA HDTV, PDIV, MDIV, DSP- DIV or D values gives values written to modulo register. When set, read ing M, N. G HDTV, PDIV, MDIV, DSPDIV or D gives actual counter value for test visibilitty.
REF?	0	0	R/WI	Reference Clocks Source Selector:  0: Reference Clocks = On-chip 32KHz oscillator  1: Reference Clocks = Ext clock

# Table 60: Clock Divider Register 1 (CMDIVI) for PLL1 (ARM Addr: 0x8007\_0008)

Name	Bits	Default	Type	Description
D1	[31:28]	0x5	RW	4-bit value for divide-by-D counter.
M1	[27:14]	0	RW	14-bit value for divide-by-M counter.
N1	[13:0]	0x1193	R/W	14-bit value for divide-by-N counter.

Table 61: Clock Divider Register 2 (CMDIV2) for PLL2 (ARM Addr: 0x8007\_OOOC)

Name	Bits	Default	Type Description	
D2	[31:28]	0	RW	4-bit value for divide-by-0 counter.
M2	[27:14]	0	R/W	14-bit value for divide-by-M counter.

N2	[13:0]	Ox5b8	R/W	14-bit value for divide-by-N counter.	
	_				1

Table 62: Clock Divider Register 3 (CMDIV3) for UART (ARM Addr: 0x8007\_0010)

Name	Bits	Default	Туре	Description
	[31:18]			Reserved
UARTEN	[17]	0	RW	UART clock enable.
USEL	[16]	0	RW	Select source of DART CLK:
				O : PLL 1
				1 : PLL 2
	[15:14]			Reserved
G2	[13:8]	0x0C	R/W	6-bit G2 counter.
	[7:6]			Reserved.
G1	[5:0]	Ox27	R/W	6-bit G1 counter.

Table 63: Clock Configuration Register 1 (CMCFG1) for PLL1 (ARM Addr: 0x8007\_0014)

Name	Bits	Defaul	Туре	Description
		t		
	[31:24]			Reserved
PHASE_LOCK	[23]		R	Set when phase difference is
_				smaller than the defined value.
FREQ_LOCK	[22]		R	Set when frequency variation
_				between reference clock and VCO
				feed- back clock is smaller than the
				defined range.

DSPCLKEN	[21]	0	RW	DSP clock enable.
HCLKEN	[20]	1	R/W	AHB clock enable.
PHASE_LOCKB_S	[19]		R/W	Sticky bit. Set when
_				PHASE_LOCK bit is 0. Cleared by
				DSP writing 0.
FREQ_LOCKB_S	[18]		R/W	Sticky bit. Set when FREQ_LOCK
				bit is 0. Cleared by DSP writing 0
FSCLKEN	[17]	0		Audio clock enable.
PHASE LOCK_EN	[15]	0	R/W	When set. Phase difference
				measurement component is
				selected for PLL lock evaluation.
FREQ_LOCK_EN	[14]	0	R/W	When set. Frequency comparator
				is selected for PLL lock evaluation.
MCLKEN	[13]	1	R/W	ARM clock enable.
PCLKEN	[12]	1	R/W	APB Clock enable.
PHASE_LOCK_DS	[11:8]	0	R/W	Phase Lock Detector Sensitivity. It
				is considered phase out-of-lock
				when more than
				PHASE_LOCK_DS+1) consecutive
				samples with UP_DN_DIFF low.
FREQ_LOCK_DS	[7:4]	0	RW	Frequency Lock Detector
				Sensitivity. It is considered
				frequency out-of-lock when the
				variation between reference clock
<b>\</b>	1	1	ļ	1

				and VCO feedback clock is greater
				than (FREQ_LOCK_DS+1)/128.
HYST_F_OUTLOCK	[3:2]	0	R/W	(HYST_F_OUTLOCK+1) is the
				hysteresis value when frequency
				out of lock is evaluated; the
				hysteresis value is the number of
				consecutive measurements of
				which the variation of two clocks is
				greater than the desired range.
HYST_F_INLOCK	[1:0]	0	R/W	(HYST_F_INLOCK+1) is the
				hysteresis value when frequency
				into lock is evaluated; the
	:			hysteresis value is the number of
				consecutive measurements of
				which the variation of two clocks is
				smaller than the desired range.

Table 64: Clock Configuration Register 2 (CMCFG2) for PLL2 (ARM Addr: 0x8007\_0018)

Name	Bits	Default	Туре	Description
	[31:24]			Reserved
PHASE_LOCK	[23]		R	Set when phase difference is smaller than the defined value.
FREQ_LOCK	[22]		R	Set when frequency variation between reference clock and

WSM Docket No.

				VCO feedback clock is smaller
				than the defined range.
DISPCLKEN	[21]	0	R/W	Enable for display (LCD) clock.
ADCCLKEN	[20]	0	R/W	Enable for ADC clock.
PHASE_LOCKB_S	[19]		RW	Sticky bit. Set when
				PHASE_LOCK bit is 0. Cleared
				by DSP writing 0.
FREQ_LOCKB_S	[18]		RW	Sticky bit. Set when
				FREQ_LOCK bit is 0. Cleared by
				DSP writing 0.
USBCLKEN	[17]	0		USB clock enable. Default 0
PHASE_LOCK_EN	[15]	0	R/W	When set. Phase difference
				measurement component is
				selected for PLL lock evaluation.
FREQ_LOCK_EN	[14]	0	R/W	When set. Frequency
				comparator is selected for PLL
				lock evaluation.
	[13:12]	1	RW	Reserved
PHASE-LOCK-S	[11:8]	1	R/W	Phase Lock Detector Sensitivity.
				It is considered phase out-of-
				lock when more than
				(PHASE_LOCK_DS+1)
				consecutive samples with
				Up_Dn_Diff low. Default 0.
	ļ.	,	ı	i e

WSM Docket No.

FREQ LOCK_DS	[7:4]	0	RW	Frequency Lock Detector
TINEQ_EOOK_DO	[17]			Sensitivity. It is considered
			:	frequency out-of-lock when the
				variation between reference
				clock and VCO feedback clock is
				greater than
				(FREQ_LOCK_DS+1)/128.
				Default 0.
HYST_F_OUTLOCK	[3:2]	0	R/W	(HYST_F_OUTLOCK+1) is the
				hysteresis value when frequency
				out of lock is evaluated; the
				hysteresis value is the number of
				consecutive measurements of
				which the variation of two clocks
				is greater than the desired
				range. Default 0.
HYST_F_INLOCK	[1:0]	0	RW	HYST_F_INLOCK+1) is the
				hysteresis value when frequency
				into lock is evaluated; the
				hysteresis value is the number of
				consecutive measurements of
				which the variation of two clocks
				is smaller than the desired
				range. Default 0.

Table 65: Clock Configuration Register 3 (CMCFG3) for Clock Dividers (ARM Addr: 0x8007\_001C)

Name	Bits	Default	Туре	Description
ADCDIV	[31:28]	0x3		4 bit value for ADCDIV. Value =
				divider - 1; reset val = 'b0011
DISPDIV	[27:24]	0xF		4 bit value for DISPDIV. Value =
				divider - 1; reset val = 'b1111
ARM_LCK	[20]	1		The 3 ARM clocks rising edges
				are locked when this is set.
				reset val 'b1
PDIV	[19:16]	0x3		4 bit value for PDIV. Value =
				divider - 1; reset val = 'b0011
MDIV	[15:12]	Ox3		4 bit value for MDIV. Value =
				divider - 1; reset val = 'b0011
HDIV	[11:8]	0x3		4 bit value for HDIV. Value =
				divider - 1; reset val = 'b0011
DSPDIV	[7:4]	0x3		4 bit value for DSPDIV. Value =
				divider -1; reset val = 'b0011
SYSDIV	[3:0]	OxF		4 bit value:Divide by = (SYSDIV +
ALC:				1). SYSDIV ='b0000 is invalid.
				At reset DSPDIV ='b1111 =>
				Divider is div by 16 of VCO

Table 66: Data Interface Register (DATAI, ARM Address: 0x8005\_0000)

WSM Docket No.

Name	Am	DetWlt	Туре	Description
	31:4			Reserved.
SLA1	3	0	R/W When SLA1 pin i s configured as an outp	
				follows data written to this register bit On
				read the SLA1 pin state is reported on this
				bit, not the value written
SLAG	2	0	RW	When SLAO pin i s configured as an output,
				it follows data written to this register bit On
				read the SLAG pin state is reported on this
				bit, not the value written.
EEDAT	1	0	R/W	When EEDAT pin is configured as an output,
				it pin follows data written to this register bit
				On read, the EEDAT pin state is reported on
				this bit, not the value written.
EECLK	0	0	R/W	When EECLK pin i s configured as an output,
				it follows data written to this register bit. On
				read, EECLK pin state is reported on this bit,
				not the value written.

Table 67: Configuration Interface Register (CFGI, ARM Address: 0x8005\_0004)

Name	Bit	Default	Тур	yp Description	
			е		
	[31:18]			Reserved.	
INTEN	[17]	0	R/W	Interrupt Enable: 1 - Transition (either high or	

				low) on EECLK input generates an interrupt
				and sets the INT bit to a one; 0 - ignore transi
				tions on EECLK, hold INT cleared
INT	[16]	0	R	Interrupt status (read-only): Set by a
				transition on the EECLK input when INTEN is
				high. Cleared by writing a one to the bit, or by
				writing zero to INTEN.
	[15:14]			Reserved.
STRT	[13]	0	RW	EEPROM Engine Start: Transition from 1 to
				0, when DIS bit is low, starts the EEPROM
				engine. Used by software to initiate
				EEPROM loads.
DIS	[12]	0	RW	EEPROM Engine Disable: 1 – Halts any
				EEPROM engine activity, or prevents engine
				from starting of it has not begun. Used by
				software to gain control of the 12C port.
FDBCK	[11]			Data feedback source select: 1 - Data
				source for Data Interface reads is the output
				register bit: 0 - Data source for Data
				Interface reads is the pin. Used for port test.
EESPD	[10]	0	R/W	EEPROM engine clock speed: Engineruns
				at 1x normal speed, 0- Engine runs at normal
		-		speed.
EEST	[9]	0	R	EEPROM engine status (read-only): 1 -

	1			Engine active, 0 – Engine inactive.	
EELD	[8]	0	R	EEPRO load status (load-only): 0=	
	[0]			EEPROM load aborted (EE not present or	
				header mismatch). 1+ EEPROM load	
				successful.	
			500		
S10D	[7]	0	RW	The SLA1 driver type: 1 - Open-drain. 0 -	
				Push-pull.	
SOOD	[6]	0	RW	The SLAO driver type: 1 - Open-drain. 0 -	
				Push-pull.	
DOD	[5]	0	RAN	RAN The EEDATA driver type: 1 - Open-drain, 0	
				Push-pull.	
COD	[4]	0	RW	The EECLK driver type: 1 - Open-drain, 0 -	
				Push-pull.	
S1 DIR	[3]	1	RW	The SLA1 pin direction: 1 - Output, 0 - Input	
SODIR	[2]	1	R/W	The SLAO pin direction: 1 - Output, 0 - Input.	
DDIR	[1]	0	R/W	The EEDATA pin direction: 1 - Output, 0 -	
				Input.	
CDIR	[0]	0	R/W	The EECLK pin direction: 1 - Output, 0 -	
				Input.	

Table 68: Test Control Register (ARM Address: Ox8O05\_0008)

Name	Bits -	Default	Туре	Description	
	[31:2]			Reserved.	
TESTEN	[1]	0	RW	Enable the test mode when set	

TISEL	[0]	0	R/W	Use the data in test input stimulus register
				as input instead of pins.

Table 69: Test Control Register (ARM Address: Ox8005\_OOOC)

Name	Bit	Defaul	Тур	Description
		t	е	
	[31:8]			Reserved.
TISR	[7:0]	0	Rn	Test control data. Data value used when
			w	TISEL bit is
				high. It provides the data bit for
				exercising the block.

Table 70: EEPROM Configuration Content

Byte Offset	Field Description	Configuration Location	Notes
0	Header / Version: Constant 55h	N/A	Abort if <> 55h
1	Configuration word 0, byte 0	0x8005 0010	
2	Configuration word 0, byte 1	0x8005_0011	
3	Configuration word 0, byte 2	0x8005 0012	
4	Configuration word 0,	0x8005_0013	

WSM Docket No.

			T
	byte 3		
5	Configuration word 1,	0x8005_0014	
	byte 0		
6	Configuration word 1,	0x8005_0015	
	byte 1		
7	Configuration word 1,	6x8005_0018	
	byte 2		
8	Configuration word 1,	0x8005_0017	
	byte 3		
9	Configuration word 2,	0x8005_0018	
	byte 0		
10	Configuration word 2,	0x8005_0019	-
	byte 1		
11	Configuration word 2.	Ox8005_001A	
	byte 2		
12	Configuration word 2,	0x8005_0018	
	byte 3		
13	Configuration word 3,	Ox8005_001C	
	byte 0		
14	Configuration word 3,	0x8005_001 D	
	byte 1		
15	Configuration word 3,	0x8005_001 E	
	byte 2		
16	Confguration word 3,	0x8005 001 F	

byte 3		
Confguration word 4,	0x8005 0020	
byte 0		
Confguration word 4,	0x8005 0021	
byte 1		
Configuration word 4,	0x8005 0022	
byte 2		
Configuration word 4,	0x8005_0023	
byte 3		
Configuration word 5,	0x8005_0024	
byte 0		
Configuration word 5,	0x8005_0025	
byte 1		
Configuration word 5,	0x8005 0026	
byte 2		
Configuration word 5,	0x8005_0027	
byte 3		
Configuration word 6,	0x8005_0028	
byte 0		
Confguration word 6,	0x8005 0029	
byte 1		
Configuration word 6,	0x8005 O02A	
byte 2		
Configuration word 6,	0x8005 0028	
	byte 0  Configuration word 4, byte 1  Configuration word 4, byte 2  Configuration word 4, byte 3  Configuration word 5, byte 0  Configuration word 5, byte 1  Configuration word 5, byte 2  Configuration word 5, byte 3  Configuration word 6, byte 0  Configuration word 6, byte 1  Configuration word 6, byte 2	Configuration word 4, byte 0  Configuration word 4, byte 1  Configuration word 4, byte 2  Configuration word 4, byte 3  Configuration word 5, byte 0  Configuration word 5, byte 1  Configuration word 5, byte 2  Configuration word 5, byte 1  Configuration word 5, byte 2  Configuration word 5, byte 2  Configuration word 5, byte 2  Configuration word 6, byte 3  Configuration word 6, byte 0  Configuration word 6, byte 0  Configuration word 6, byte 1  Configuration word 6, byte 0  Configuration word 6, byte 1  Configuration word 6, byte 2  Configuration word 6, byte 2  Configuration word 6, byte 2  Configuration word 6, byte 2

	byte 3		
29	Configuration word 7, byte 0	0x8005 002C	
30	Confguration word 7, byte 1	Ox8tO5_002D	
31	Configuration word 7, byte 2	Ox8005_O02E	
32	Confguration word 7, byte 3	0x8005 002E	
33	Configuration word 8, byte 0	0x8005_0030	
34	Configuration word 8, byte 1	0x8005 0031	
35	Confguration word 8, byte 2	0x8005_0032	
36	Configuration word 8, byte 3	0x8005_0033	
37	Confguration word 9, byte 0	0x8005_0034	
38	Confguration word 9, byte 1	0x8005_0035	
39	Configuration word 9, byte 2	0x8005 0036	-

Table 71: RTO Control Register (RTCCR ARM Address: 0x8009\_0010\_

Name	Bit	Default	Туре	Description
	[31:2]			Same as RTCCR defined in PrimeCell-RTC documents
RTCRSTST	[1]	0	R/W	Reset status. The flag can be used to distinguish different resets.
	[0]		R/W	Same as RTCCR defined in PrimeCell-RTC documents

Table 72: USB Standard Request Codes

BRequest	Value	Supported
GET_STATUS	0x0	yes
CLEAR-FEATURE	0x1	yes
Reserved	0x2	n/a
SET FEATURE	0x3	yes
Reserved	0x4	n/a
SET ADDRESS	0x5	yes
GET DESCRIPTOR	0x8	yes
SET DESCRIPTOR	0x7	no
GET	0xe	yes
CONFIGURATION		
SET	0x9	yes
CONFIGURATION		
GET_INTERFACE -	0xA	yes

WSM Docket No.

SET_INTERFACE	us	yes
SYNCH FRAME	0xC	no

USB Vendor/Class Commands

Table 73: USBCTL (USB Control Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0000)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
UDC-STATE	[11:9]	000	R	These are the internal state bits for
				the UDC side of the USB- APB
				bridge:
				000 UDC-IDLE
				001 UDC-READ
				010 UDC_WRITE
				011 UDC-SETUP-WRITE
				100 UDC_FIFO_WRITE
				101 UDC-FIFO-READ
				110 UDC-STALL
ARMCFGRDY	[8]	0	RNII	Set by ARM after the USB-APB
				bridge configuration registers are
				programmed. At this point the bridge
				will begin sending the appropriate
				bytes to the UDC.
VC_CMDEN	[7]	0	RW	When set, Vendor/Class commands
				are supported. When clear, the

BRIDGERST	[6]	0	W	bridge will NAK the UDC which will then NAK the host over the USB cable if Enpoint 1 is accessed.  Set this bit to 1 to reset the USB-APB bridge. This bit is self resetting
				so, although reading is supported, it is not meaningful. Setting this bit will reset the bridge state, DG registers, and FIFO state. It does not reset the UDC. Due to the self-resetting
				nature of this bit, once this bit is set microprocessor 101 should not write to the bridge for at least four APB clocks to allow all registers to reset and the bit to self-reset.
USBBLKDIR	[5]	0	R	USB bulk transfer direction. When 0, Bulk IN is in progress. When 1, Bulk OUT is in progress.
UDCSTALL	[4]	0	RW	When set, the bridge will stall the UDC which in turn will stall the host. The UDC stores the stall state until cleared by the host through a CLEAR FEATURE command.
UDCRESUME	[3]	0	RW	Set high to resume USB operation

				from suspend mode. Setting this bit
				when UDCSUSPND is asserted will
				initiate the remote wakeup feature.
				This bit is cleared automatically after
				the de-assertion of UDCSUSPND.
				Setting this bit when UDCSUSPEND
				is not set has no effect
UDCSUSPND	[2]	0	R	Set when USB cable in suspend
				mode (idle for 3ms or set by host).
				Cleared when USB cable goes non-
				idle or microprocessor 101 sets the
				UDCRESUME bit.
UDCCFGRDY	[1]	0	R	Set when the USB,APB bridge has
				completed the initialization of the
				UDC from FIFO0
USBEN	[0]	0	R/W	USB Port Enable. When low, the
				UDC is held in reset. Set high in
				normal operation. If this bit is
				cleared after having been set, the
				ARM must reinitialize the UDC
				configuration registers.
1	1	1	1	I .

Table 74: USBDATO (USB DATAO Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0004)

	Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
1		1			

WSM Docket No.

DATAO	[31:0]	0x00000000	R/W	DATA for FIFO0 Unregistered access
				to FIFO0 is accomplished through this
				port. Microprocessor 101 can fill or
				drain the FIFO as needed without any
				intervention from the UDC or bridge.

Table 75: USBDAT1 (USB DATA1 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0008)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
DATA1	[31:0]	0x00000000	RW	DATA for FIF01. Unregistered access
				to FIF01 is accom plished through this
				port. Microprocessor 101 can fill/drain
				the FIFO as needed without any
				intervention from the UDC or bridge.

Table 76: USBDATCNO (USB DATAO FIFO Control Register, ARM Address=Ox8000\_OOOC)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
			DAM	When a Bulk OUT packet is received by
TOTLCNT	[7:0]	0x00	RW	
				the bridge from the UDC this register is
				loaded with the number of valid bytes.
				When a Bulk IN is active this register is
				written by microprocessor 101 to indicate
				the number of valid bytes in the FIFO.

WSM Docket No.

Writing this register is an indication to the
bridge that microprocessor 101 is done
writing the FIFO and data can then be
sent to the UDC.

Table 77: USBDATCNI (USB DATAI FIFO Control Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0010)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
		<u> </u>	<del> </del>	
TOTLCNT	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	When a Bulk OUT packet is received by
				the bridge from the UDC, this register is
				loaded with the number of valid bytes.
				When a Bulk IN is active this register is
				written by microprocessor 101 to indicate
				the number of valid bytes in the FIFO.
				Writing this register is an indication to the
				bridge that microprocessor 101 is done
				writing the FIFO and data can then be
				sent to the UDC.

Table 78: USBFIFOST (USB FIFO Status Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0014)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
FIFO-1-STATE	[8:7]	00	R	These are the internal state bits for FIF01:

WSM Docket No.

				00 FIFO IDLE	
				01 FIFO WRITE	
				10 FIFO-READ	
				11 FIFO FULL	
				Note that the FIFO-FULL state does not	
				necessarily mean that the FIFO is full; it	
		1		merely means that the writer of the FIFO	
				is done with its writing and the data can	
				now be drained. For a Bulk OUT transfer	
				the UDC indicates the transfer is complete	
				and the state transitions from	
				FIFO_WRITE to FIFO_FULL. For a Bulk	
				IN, microprocessor 101 writing the	
				TOTLCNT will cause the state transition	
				from FIFO-WRITE to FIFO_FULL.	
FIFO-0-STATE	[6:5]	00	R	These are the internal state bits for FIFOO:	1
				00 FIFO IDLE	
				01 FIFO WRITE	
				10 FIFO READ	
				11 FIFO FULL	
				Note that the FIFO FULL state does not	
				necessarily mean that the FIFO is "full,' it	
				merely means that the writer of the FIFO is	
				done with its writing and the data can now	
1	1	1	1	be drained. For a Bulk OUT transfer the	•

WSM Docket No. 2836- P139US be drained. For a Bulk OUT transfer the UDC indicates the transfer is complete and the state transitions from FIFO WRITE to FIFO-FULL. For a Bulk IN, microprocessor 101 writing the TOTLCNT will cause the state transition from FIFO\_WRITE to FIFO-FULL.

FIFOSTRT	[4]	0	R/W	For a Bulk IN this bit is set by
				microprocessor 101 whenever it fills both
				FIF09 at once. It tells the bridge which
		!		FIFO to read first when two FIFOs are full.
				After setting this bit, it will be toggled by the
				hardware as it ping-pongs between each
				FIFO. If both FIFOs are allowed to drain,
				microprocessor 101 must set this bit again
				after filling the two FIFOs.
FIF01 RST	[3]	0	R/W	Setting this bit will reset FIF01. It is not
				self-resetting.
FIFO0RST	[2]	0	RW	Setting this bit will reset FIFO 0. It is not
				self-resetting.
FIF01 RDY	[1]	0	R	Bulk IN active (USBBLKDIR=0) - FIF01 is
				empty. Bulk OUT active (USBBLKDIR=1) -
				FIF01 has a valid packet.
FIFO0RDY	[0]	0	R	Bulk IN activ (USBBLKDIR=0) - FIFO 0 is
				empty. Bulk OUT active (USBBLKDIR=1) -
				FIFO 0 has a valid packet.

Table 79: USBINTRCN (USB General Interrupt Control Register, ARM

WSM Docket No.

### Address=0x8000\_0018)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
	[31]	0		Reserved
RESINTR	[30]	0	R/W	Set by bridge when it detects a
				RESUME event from UDC. Clear by
				writing 1.
SUSINTR	[29]	0	RW	Set by bridge when it detects that the
				UDC is entering USB SUSPEND. Clear
				by writing 1.
STROK5	[28]	0	R/W	Set by ARM to indicate that there is valid
				data in STRBUF5. This bit is cleared by
				hardware after the valid data is sent to
				the UDC.
STROK4	[27]	0	R/W	Set by ARM to indicate that there is valid
				data in STRBUF4. This bit is cleared by
				hardware after the valid data is sent to
				the UDC.
STROK3	[26]	0	R/W	Set by ARM to indicate that there is valid
				data in STRBUF3. This bit is cleared by
				hardware after the valid data is sent to
				the UDC.
STROK2	[25]	0	RW	Set by ARM to indicate that there is valid
				data in STRBUF2. This bit is cleared by
				hardware after the valid data is sent to
				the UDC.
MSM Docket I	No. I	ŧ	1	1

WSM Docket No.

STROK1	[24]	0	RW	Set by ARM to indicate that there is valid
				data in STRBUF1. This bit is cleared by
				hardware after the valid data is sent to
				the UDC.
STROKO	[23]	0	R/W	Set by ARM to indicate that there is valid
				data in STRBUFO. This bit is cleared by
				hardware after the valid data is sent to
				the UDC.
STRINTR5	[22]	0	R/W	String Descriptor 5 interrupt Set when
				the UDC attempts to read the STRBUF5
				and the STROK5 bit is not set. Clear by
				writing 1.
STRINTR4	[21]	0	R/W	String Descriptor 4 interrupt. Set when
				the UDC attempts to read the STRBUF4
				and the STROK4 bit is not set. Clear by
				writing 1.
STRINTR3	[20]	0	R/W	String Descriptor 3 interrupt Set when
				the UDC attempts to read the STRBUF3
				and the STROK3 bit is not set. Clear by
				writing 1.
STRINTR2	[19]	0	RW	String Descriptor 2 interrupt Set when
				the UDC attempts to read the STRBUF2
			-	and the STROK2 bit is not set. Clear by
				writing 1.
		'		

WSM Docket No.

STRINTRI	[18]	0	RW	String Descriptor 1 interrupt Set when
				the UDC attempts to read the STRBUF1
				and the STROK1 bit is not set. Clear by
				writing 1.
STRINTRO	[17]	0	R/W	String Descriptor 0 interrupt Set when
				the UDC attempts to read the STRBUFO
				and the STROKO bit is not set. Clear by
				writing 1.
BLKINTR	[16]	0	R/W	Bulk-transfer request. When set,
-				microprocessor 101 must read the USB-
				BLKDIR bit and the
				FIFO0RDY/FIFO1RDY bits to determine
				its next course of action. Clear by writing
			,	1.
	[15:10]	0		Reserved
USBINTOEN	[9]	0	R/W	Master enable for general interrupts.
				When set, any interrupt not masked by it
				mask bit in bits [8:0] may generate a
				general interrupt (INTR) to
				microprocessor 101.
RESINTMSK	[8]	0	R/W	Resume interrupt mask.When set, the
				RESINTR general interrupt is enabled.
				Clear to mask interrupt.

SUSINTMSK	[7]	0	R/W	Suspend interrupt mask. When set. the
				SUSINTR general interrupt is enabled.
				Clear to mask interrupt.
STRINTMSK5	[6]	0	RW	String Descriptor 5 interrupt mask. When
				set, the STRINTR5 general interrupt is
				enabled. Clear to mask interrupt.
STRINTMSK4	[5]	0	R/W	String Descriptor 4 interrupt mask. When
				set, the STRINTR4 general interrupt is
				enabled. Clear to mask interrupt.
STRINTMSK3	[4]	0	R/W	String Descriptor 3 interrupt mask. When
				set, the STRINTR3 general interrupt is
				enabled. Clear to mask interrupt.
STRINTMSK2	[3]	0	R/W	String Descriptor 2 interrupt mask. When
				set, the STRINTR2 general interrupt is
				enabled. Clear to mask interrupt.
STRINTMSKI	[2]	0	R/W	String Descriptor 1 interrupt mask. When
				set, the STRINTR1 general interrupt is
				enabled. Clear to mask interrupt.
STRINTMSK0	[1]	0	R/W	String Descriptor 0 interrupt mask. When
				set, the STRINTR0 general interrupt is
				enabled. Clear to mask interrupt.
BLKINTMSK	[0]	0	R/W	Bulk-transfer interrupt mask. When set,
				the BLKINTR general interrupt is
				enabled. Clear to mask interrupt.

Table 80: USBSTROBUF (USB String 0 Buffer Register, ARM Address=Ox8000\_001C)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
STRBUFO	[31:0]	0x00000000	R/W	String Buffer 0 for Control IN after
				GET_DESCRIPTOR (String
				0) cornmand. Firted and drained in
				little endian byte order.

# Table 81: USBSTRBUF (USB String 1 Buffer Register, ARM Address=Ox8000\_0020)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
STRBUF1	[31:0]	0x00000000	R/W	String Buffer 1 for Control IN after
				GET_DESCRIPTOR (String 1)
				command. Filled and drained in little
				endian byte order.

# Table 82: USBSTR2BUF (USB String 2 Buffer Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0024)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
STRBUF2	[31:0]	040000000	R/W	String Buffer 2 for Control IN after
				GET_DESCRIPTOR (String 2)
				command. Filled and drained in little
				endian byte order.

# Table 83: USSSTR3BUF (USB String 3 Buffer Register, ARM Address=Ox8000\_0028)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description

WSM Docket No.

STRBUF3	[31:0]	"0x00000000	RW	String Buffer 3 for Control IN after
				GET_DESCRIPTOR (String 3)
				command. Filled and drained in little
		<u> </u>		endian byte order.

# Table 84: USBSTR4BUF (USB String 4 Buffer Register, ARM Address=f8000\_002C)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
STRBUF4	[31:0]	0x00000000	RW	String Buffer 4 for Control IN after
				GET-DESCRIPTOR (String 4)
				command. Filled and drained in little
				endian byte order.

## Table 85: USBSTR5BUF (USB String 5 Buffer Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0030)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
STRBUF5	[31:0]	0x00000000	R/W	String Buffer 5 for Control IN after
				GET DESCRIPTOR (String 5)
				command. Filled and drained in little
				endian byte order.

## Table 86: VC\_SETHI (Vendor/Class Command Setup, ARM Address=0x8000\_0034)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Type	Description
1				

WSM Docket No.

•

VC_SETHI	[31:0]	0x00000000	R	First 4 bytes of Vendor/Class
				command SETUP packet in big
				endian order. Byte 1-
				VC_SETHI[31:24] - bmRequestType
				Byte 2 - VC_SETHI[23:16] -
				bRequest Byte 3 - VC_SETHI[15:8] -
				Value [15:8] Byte 4 - VC_SETHI[7:0]
				- Value [7:0] As mentioned above,
				this register will always contain any
				SETUP packet sent by the UDC.

182

Table 87: VC\_SETLO (Vendor/Class Command SETUP, ARM Address=0x8000\_0038)

Name	Bit	Rest Value	Туре	Description
VC_SETLO	[31:O]	0x00000000	R	Second 4 bytes of Vendor/Class
		Transition of the Control of the Con		command SETUP packet in big endian
				order: Byte 5 - VC_SETLO(31:24) -
				windex [15:8] Byte 8 -
				VC_SETL0i23:18] - wIndex [7:0] Byte t-
				VC_SETLO[15:8] - wLength (15:8]
				Byte 8 - VC_SETLOi7:0] - wLength
				[7:0] This register always contains any
				SETUP packet sent by the UDC.

Table 88: VC\_INHI (Vendor/Class Command Control IN Register, ARM Address=Ox8000\_003C)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
VC_INHI	[31:O]	0x00000000	R/W	First d bytes for Vendor/Class
				command Control IN. Sent in big
				endian byte order:
				Byte 1 - VC_INHI[31:24]
				Byte 2 - VC_INHI[23:18]
				Byte 3 - VC_INHI[15:8]
				Byte 4 - VC INHI[7:0]

Table 89: VC\_INLO (Vendor/Class Command Control IN Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0040)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
VC_INLO	[31:0]	0x00000000	R/W	Second 4 bytes for Vendor/Class
				command Control IN. Sent in big endian
				byte order:
				Byte 5 - VC_INLO[31:24]
				Byte 6 - VC_INLO[23:18]
				Byte 7 - VC_INLO[15:8]
				Byte 8 - VC_INLO[7:0]

Table 90: VC\_OUTHI (Vendor/Class Command Control OUT Register, ARM Address-W000-0044)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		

WSM Docket No.

VC_OUTHI	[31:0]	0x0000000	R	First 4 bytes for Vendor/Class
		0		command Control OUT. Filled in big
				endian byte order.
				Byte 1 - VC_INHI[31:24]
				Byte 2 - VC_INHI[23:18j
				Byte 3 - VC_INHI[15:8]
				Byte 4 - VC_INHI[7:01]

Table 91: VC\_OUTLO (Vendor/Class Command Control OUT, ARM Address=0x8000\_0048)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
1		Value		
VC_OUTLO	[31:0]	0x0000000	R	Second 4 bytes for Vendor/Class
		0		command Control OUT
				Filled in big endian byte order:
				Byte 5 - VC_INLO[31:24]
			:	Byte 6- VC_INLO[23:18]
				Byte 7 - VC_INLO[15:8]
				Byte 8-VC INLO[7:O]

Table 92: VC\_INTRCN (Vendor/Class Command Interrupt Control, ARM Address=Ox8000\_004C)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		

WSM Docket No.

	[31:19]	0		Reserved
VC_OUTINTR	[18]	0	R/W	Vends/Class command Control OUT
				interrupt. When set, I microprocessor
				101 reads the data from a Control OUT
				following a Vendor/Class command held
				in the VC_OUTHIILO registers. Clear by
				writing 1.
VC_ININTR	[17]	0	RW	Vendor/Class command Control IN
				interrupt. When set, the ARM reads the
				VC_INHI/LO registers for a Control IN
				following a Vendor/Class command.
				Clear by writing 1.
VC_SETINTR	[18]	0	R/W	Vendor/Class command SETUP
				interrupt. When set, the ARM reads and
				decodes the Vends/Class command held
				in the VC SETHIILO registers. Clear by
				writing 1.
	[15:12]	0		Reserved
VC_INTREN	[11]	0	RW	Master enable for Vendor/Class
				command interrupts. When set, any
				interrupt not masked by its mask b8 in
				bits [8:0] may generate a Vendor/Class
				command interrupt (VC_INTR) to
				microprocessor 101.

VC_OUTINTMSK	[10]	0	R/W	VC_OUTINTR mask. When set, VC_OUTINTR will generate a VC INTR to ARM.
VC_ININTMSK	[9]	0	R/W	VC_ININTR mask. When set, VC_ININTR will generate a VC INTR to ARM.
VC_SETINTMSK	[8]	0	R/W	VC SETINTR mask. When set, VC_SETINTR will generate a VC INTR to ARM.
VC_INCNT	[7:4]	0x0	RW	Number of valid bytes in VC_INHI/LO which the bridge must send to UDC.
VC_OUTCNT	[3:0]	0x0	R/W	Number of valid bytes in VC_OUTHI/LO which microprocessor 101 must read. Clear by writing 1's.

#### Table 93: DEVICEDESCO (Device Descriptor 0 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0050)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
	[31:16]	0	R	Reserved
d_bLength	[15:8]	0x12	R	Size of this descriptor in bytes.
d_bDescriptorType	[7:0]	0x01	R	DEVICE Descriptor Type.

Table 94: DEVICEDESCI (Device Descriptor 1 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0054)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
1	- 1	ľ	1	<b>∤</b>

WSM Docket No.

		Value		
d_tx:dUSB	[31:16]	0x0011	R	USB Specification Release Number
				in Binary Coded Decimal (BCD). The
				UDC is USB 1.1 compliant.
d_bDeviceClass	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Class code.
d_bDeviceSubClas	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Subclass code.
s				

## Table 95: DEVICEDESC2 (Device Descriptor 2 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0058)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
d_bDeviceProtocol	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Protocol code.
d_bMaxPacketSizeO	[23:16]	0x08	R	Maximum packet size for endpoint
				zero.
d_dVendor	[15:0]	0x0000	R/W	Vendor ID.

### Table 96: DEVICEDESC3 (Device Descriptor 3 Register, ARM Address=Ox8000\_005C)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
d_idProduct	[31:16]	0x0000	R/W	Product ID.
d_bcdDevice	[15:0]	0x0000	R/W	Device release number in BCD.

## Table 97: DEVICEDESC4 (Device Descriptor 4 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0060)

Hame The Trees Type Description	Name	Bits	Reset	Туре	Description
---------------------------------	------	------	-------	------	-------------

WSM Docket No.

		Value		
d_iManufacturer	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Index of string descriptor describing manufacturer.
d_iProduct	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Index of string descriptor describing product.
d_iSerialNumber	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Index of string descriptor describing device's serial number.
d_NumConfigurat'rons	[7:0]	0x02	R	Number of possible configurations.

Table 98: CFGODESCO (Configuration 0 Descriptor 0 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0064)

Name	Bit	Reset	Тур	Description
		Value	е	
	[31:8]	0x000000	R	Reserved
c0 blength	[7:0]	0x09	R	Size of this descriptor in bytes

Table 99: CFGODESCI (Configuration 0 Descriptor 1 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0068)

Name	Bit	Reset	Тур	Description
		Value	е	
c0_bDescriptorType	[31:24]	0x02	R	CONFIGURATION
cO_wTotalLength	[23:8]	0x0012	R	Total length of data returned for this

configuration. Includes the combined length of all the descriptors (configuration, interface, endpoint, and class or vendor specific) returned for this configuration.

c0_bNuminterfaces	[7:0]	0x01	R	Number of interfaces supported by this configuration.

Table 100: CFGODESC2 (Configuration 0 Descriptor 2 Register, ARM Address=Ox8000\_006C)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
c0_bConfigurationValue	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Value to use as an argument to
				Set Configuration to select this
				configuration.
cO_iConfguration	[23:18]	0x00	R/W	Index of string descriptor
				describing this configuration.

c0_bmAttributes	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Configuration characteristics D7
				Bus Powered D6 Self Powered
				D5 Remote Wakeup D40
				Reserved (reset to 0) A device
				configuration that uses power
				from the bus and a local source
				set both D7 and D6. The actual
				power source at runtime may be
				determined using the Get Status
				device request. If a device
				configuration supports remote
				wakeup, D5 is set to 1.
cO_MaxPower	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Maximum power consumption of
				USB device from the bus in this
				specific configuration when the
				device is fully operational.
				Expressed in 2 mA units (i.e., 50
				= 100mA).

Table 101: CFGOIFODESCO (Configuration 0 Interface 0 Descriptor 0, ARM Address-0x8000\_0070)

ſ	Name	Bit	Reset	Тур	Description
			Value _	е	
		[31:8]	0x000000	R	Reserved

WSM Docket No.

c0i0_bLength	[7:0]	0x09	R	Size of this descriptor in bytes.

Table 102: CFGOIFODESCI (Configuration 0 Interface 0 Descriptor 1, ARM Address=Ox8000\_0074)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
c0i0_bDescriptorType	[31:24]	0x04	R	INTERFACE Descriptor Type.
c0i0_bInterfaceNumber	[23:16]	0x00	R	Number of Interface.
c0i0_bAltemateSetting	[15:8]	0X00	RW	Value used to select alternate setting for the interface identified in the prior field.
c0i0=bNumEndpoints-	[7:0]	0x00	R	Number of endpoints used by this interface (excluding endpoint zero). If this value is 0. this interface only uses endpoint 0.

Table 103: CFGOIFODESC2 (Configuration 0 Interface 0 Descriptor 2, ARM Address=0x8000\_0078)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
c0i0- blnterfaceClass	[31:24]	OX00	R/W	Class code.

WSM Docket No.

c0i0 bInterfaceSubClass	[23:16]	OX00	RW	Subclass code.
c0i0- binterfaceProtocol	[15:8]	OX00	RW	Protocol code.
c0i0_iInterface	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Index of string descriptor describing this interface

Table 104: CFG1 DESCO (Configuration 1 Descriptor 0 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_007C)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
	[31:8]	0x000000	R	Reserved
c1_bLength	[7:0]	0x09	R	Size of this descriptor in bytes.

Table 105: CFGIDESCI (Configuration 1 Descriptor 1 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0080)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
c1_bDescriptorType	[31:24]	0x02	R	CONFIGURATION
c1_wTotallength	[23:8]	0x0027	R	Total length of data returned for this configuration. Includes the combined length of all the descriptors (configuration, interface, endpoint, and class or vendor specific) returned for
				this configuration.

WSM Docket No.

c1_bNumInterfaces	[7:0]	0x01	R	Number of interfaces supported by this
				configuration.

Table 106: CFGIDESC2 (Configuration 1 Descriptor 2 Register, ARM Address=0x8000\_0084)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
c1_bConfigurationValue	[31:24]	0x00	R/W	Value to use as an argument to
				Set Configuration to select this
				configuration.
c1_iConfiguration	[23:16]	0XO0	R/W	Index of string descriptor
				describing this configuration.

c1_bmAttributes	[15:8]	0X00	R/W	Configuration characteristics D7
				Bus Powered D6 Self Powered
				D5 Remote Wakeup D40
				Reserved (reset to 0) A device
				configuration that uses power
				from the bus and a local source
				set both 07 and 06. The actual
		<u> </u>		power source at runtime may
				be determined using the Get
				Status device request. If a
				device configuration supports
				remote wakeup, 05 is set to 1.
c1_MaxPower	[7:0]	0X00	R/W	Maximum power consumption
				of USB device from the bus in
				this specific configuration when
				the device is fully operational.
				Expressed in 2 mA units (i.e.,
				50 = 100mA).

Table 107: CFGIIFODESCO (Configuration 1 Interface 0 Descriptor 0, ARM Address=0x8000\_0088)

Name	Bit	Reset	Тур	Description
		Value	е	

WSM Docket No.

	[31:8]	0x000000	R	Reserved
c1_i0_bLength	[7:0]	0x09	R	Size of this descriptor in bytes.

Table 108: CFGIIFODESCI (Configuration 1 Interface 0 Descriptor 1, ARM Address=Ox8000\_008C)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
c1 i0 bDescriptorType	[31:24]	0x04	R	INTERFACE Descriptor Type.
c1i0 blnterfaceNumber	[23:16]	0x00	R	Number of interface.
c1i0_blternateSetfing	[15:8]	0x00	R/W	Value used to select alternate setting for the interface identified in the prior field.
c1i0_bNumEndpoints	[7:0]	0x03	R	Number of endpoints used by this interface (excluding endpoint zero). If this value is 0, this interface only uses endpoint 0.

Table 109: CFGIIFODESC2 (Configuration 1 Interface 0 Descriptor 2, ARM Address=0x8000\_0090)

Name	B8	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		
c1_0_bintenrFaceCtall	31:24]	0x00	R/W	Class code.
c0i0- blnterfaceSubClass	[23:16]	0x00	R/W	Subclass code.
c0i0- bInterfaceProtocol	[15:8]	0x00	RW	Protocol code.
c0i0_iInterface	[7:0]	0x00	R/W	Index of string descriptor

WSM Docket No.

	describing this interface

Table 110: EPIDESCO (Endpoint 1 Descriptor 0, ARM Address=0x8000\_0094)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
	[31:24]	0x00	R	Reserved
ep1_bLength	[23:16]	0x09	R	Length of this descriptor in bytes.
ep1_bDescriptorType	[15:8]	0x05	R	ENDPOINT Descriptor Type.
ep1_bEndpointAddress	[7:0]	0x01	R	The address of the endpoint on the USB device described by this descriptor. The address is encoded as follows: Bit 03: The endpoint number Bit 46: Reserved, reset to 0 Bit 7: Direction, ignored for control endpoints 0 OUT endpoint 1 IN endpoint

Table 111: EPIDESCI (Endpoint 1 Descriptor 1, ARM Address=0x8000\_0098)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		

WSM Docket No.

epl- bmAttributes	[31:24]	0x00	R	This field describes the endpoint's attributes when it is configured using the bConfigurationValue. Bit 01: Transfer Type 00 Control 01 Isochronous 10 Bulk 11 Interrupt All other bits are reserved.
epl- wMaxPacketSize	[23:8]	0x0008	R	Maximum packet size this endpoint is capable of sending or receiving when this configuration is selected.
ep1_blnterval	[7:0]	Ox00	R	Interval for polling endpoint for data transfters. Expressed in milliseconds. This field is ignored for bulk and control endpoints.

Table 112: EP2DESC0 (Endpoint 2 Descriptor 0, ARM Address=Ox8000\_009C)

Name	Bit	Reset	Тур	Description
		Value	е	
	[31:24]	0x00	R	Reserved

WSM Docket No.

ep2_bLength	[23:16]	Ox09	R	Size of this descriptor in bytes.
ep2_bDescriptorType	[15:8]	0x05	R	ENDPOINT Descriptor Type.
ep2_bEndpointAddress	[7:0]	0x82	R	The address of the endpoint on the USB device described by this descriptor. The address is encoded as follows:  Bit 03: The endpoint number Bit 46: Reserved, reset to 0 Bit 7: Direction, ignored for control
				endpoints 0 OUT endpoint 1 IN endpoint

Table 113: EP2DESC1 (Endpoint 2 Descriptor 1, ARM Address=0x8000\_OOA0)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		

				The Calabarania on the angle similar
ep2_bmAttributes	[31:24]	0x02	R	This field describes the endpoint's
				attributes when it is configured using
				the bConfigurationValue
				Bit 01: Transfer Type
				00 Control
			,	01 Isochronous
				10 Bulk
				11 Interrupt
				All other bits are reserved.
ep2_wMaxPacketSize	[23:8]	0x0040	R	Maximum packet size this endpoint is
				capable of sending or receiving when
				this configuration is selected.
ep2_binterval	[7:0]	0x00	R	Interval for polling endpoint for data
				transfters. Expressed in milliseconds.
				This field is ignored for bulk and
				control endpoints.
	1		1	I am a second and a

Table 114: EP3DESC0 (Endpoint 3 Descriptor 0, ARM Address=Ox8000\_OOA4)

Name	Bit	Reset Value	Туре	Description
	[31:24]	0x00	R	Reserved
ep3_bLength	[23:16]	0x09	R	Size of this descriptor in bytes.

WSM Docket No.

ep3_bDescriptorType	[15:8]	0x05	R	ENDPOINT Descriptor Type.
ep3_bEndpointAddress	[7:0]	0x03	R	The address of the endpoint on the USB device described by this descriptor. The address is encoded as follows: Bit 03: The endpoint number Bit 46: Reserved. reset to 0 Bit 7: Direction, ignored for control endpoints 0 OUT endpoint 1 IN endpoint

Table 115: EP3DESC1 (Endpoint 3 Descriptor 1, ARM Address=0x8000\_OOA8)

Name	Bit	Reset	Туре	Description
		Value		

ep3_bmAttributes	[31:24]	0x02	R	This field describes the endpoint's
				attributes when it is configured
				using the bConfgurationValue.Bit
				01: Transfer Type
				00 Control
				01 Isochronous
				10 Bulk
				11 Interrupt
				All other bits are reserved.
			ļ ]	
ep3_wMaxPacketSize	[23:8]	0x0040	R	Maximum packet size this
				endpoint is capable of sending or
				receiving when this configuration
				is selected.
ep3_blnterval	[7:0]	0x00	R	Interval for polling endpoint for
				data transfters. Expressed in
				milliseconds. This field is ignored
				for bulk and control endpoints.

Table 116: UDC Configuration Register Values (FIFO0

UDC Register	Value
ConfigBuf0	0x00120100
ConfgBufl	0x00270200

String8uf0	0x040400
StringBufl	0x040800
StringBuf2	0x041000
StringBuf3	0x042000
StringBuf4	0x044000
StringBuf5	0x048000
EndPtBuf0	0x0000100000
EndPtBuf1	0x1500100040
EndPtBuf2	0x2528800080
EndPtBuf3	0x35208000c0

Table 117: DEBUGCFG(0-3) (ARM Addr: 0x8011\_0000, 0x8011\_0040, 0x8011\_0080, 0x8011\_OOCO; DSP Addr: 0x2000, 0x2040, 0x2080, Ox20C0)

Name	Bits	Default	Description
dbgen	[23]	0	Debug enable : Reset Value 0
	[22:20]		Reserved
inten	[19]	0	Debug enable: Reset Value 0
	[18:16]		Reserved
owner	[15]	0	Owner: Read only: Reset Value 0
	[14:12]		Reserved
other_wr	[11]	1	Other Processor write enable: Reset Value: 1
	[10:8]		Reserved
Gk_frz_en	[7]	0 .	Clock Freeze enable. Reset Value : 0
	[6:4]		Reserved

mem	[3:2]	00	Selects the memory to look at:
			00 : X mem
			01 : Y mem
			10 : P mem
			11 : reserved
			Reset Value: 00
	[1]		Reserved
rd wrb	[0]	0	Read event when '1': Write event when '0' Reset value:  0. It further specifies the trigger event of not only accessing the defined location, but also performing read/write operation.

Table 118: DEBUG\_STRT\_RNG (0-3) (ARM Addr: 0x8011\_0004, 0x8011\_0044, 0x8011\_0084, 0x8011\_00C4; DSP Addr: 0x2004, 0x2044, 0x2084, 0x20C4)

Name	Bits	Default	Description
	[23:16]	0	Reserved: Read only: Reset value 0
START	[15:0]	0	Start address range: Reset value 0
RANGE			

Table 119: DEBUG\_END\_RNG (0-3) (ARM Addr: 0x8011\_0008, 0x8011\_0048, 0x8011\_0088, Ox8011\_OOC8; DSP Addr: 0x2008, 0x2048, 0x2088, Ox20C8)

Name	Bits	Default	Description
	[23:16]	0	Reserved : Read only: Reset value 0

END RANGE	[15:0]	0	End address range: Reset value 0

Table 120: DEBUG\_HIT\_CNT (0-3) (ARM Addr: Ox8011\_OOOC, Ox8011\_004C, Ox8011\_008C, Ox8011\_OOCC; DSP Addr: Ox200C, Ox204C, OX208C, Ox20CC)

Name	Bits	Default	Description
	[23:8]	0	Reserved : Read only : Reset value 0
HIT-COUNT	[7:0]	0	Current Hit count Reset value 0

Table 121: DEBUG\_HIT2TRG (0-3)(ARM Addr: 0x8011\_0010, 0x8011\_0050, 0x8011\_0090, Ox8011\_OODO; DSP Addr: 0x2010, 0x2050, 0x2090, WOW)

Name	Bits	Description	
	[23:8]	Reserved : Read only: Reset value 0	
HIT2TRIGGER	[7:0]	Hits before Triggered Reset value 0	
		Interrupt/Clock freeze occurs when HIT COUNT >	
		HIT2TRIGGER	

Table 122: DEBUG\_CTL (ARM Addr: 0x8011\_00F0; DSP Addr: 0x20F0)

Name	Bits	Default	Description
CLK FREEZE	[23]	0	Set when Clock to DSP is frozen. A write '0'
			restarts the DSP CLK. Reset value 0
	[22:3]		Reserved
DSP_RESET	[4]	0	When set, reset the DSP core. Default value 0
DBGINTSRC	[3:0]	0	Status of the interrupt lines of debug block 3-0:
			Reset Value 0 : read only

Table 123: Inter-processor Communication Registerl to ARM (IPC2ARM1 ARM\_Addr--0x800F\_0000; DSP 10 Addr-0x3000)

Field Name	Bit	Default	Description
	[31:24]	0	Reserved by ARM only.
	[23:4]	0	Reserved.
DSPINTI	[0]	0	DSP Interrupt request 1; When set, generates, interrupt request to ARM.

Table 124: Interprocessor Communication Register2 to ARM (IPC2ARM2 ARM\_Addr--0x800F\_0004; DSP\_10\_Addr--0x3001)

Field Name	Bits	Default	Description
	[23:4]	0	Reserved.
DSPINT2	[0]	0	DSP Interrupt request 2; When set, generates interrupt request to ARM.

Table 125: Inter-processor Communication Register3 to ARM (IPC2ARM3 ARM Addr-0x800F\_0008; DSP\_10\_Addr-3002)

Field Name	Bits	Default	Description
	[31:24]	0	Reserved by ARM only.
	[23:4]	0	Reserved.
DSPINT3	[0]	0	DSP Interrupt request 3; When set, generates interrupt request to ARM.

Table 126: Inter-processor Communication Register4 to ARM (IPC2ARM4 ARM\_Addr-0x800F\_000C; DSP\_10\_Addr=3003)

Field Name	Bits	Default	Description
	[31:24]	0	Reserved by ARM only.
	[23:4]	0	Reserved.
DSPINT4	[0].	0	DSP interrupt request 4; When set, generates interrupt request to ARM.

Table 127: List of Registers in I2SOUT Block

NAME	ARM ADD	DSP DD	DESCRIPTION
	(32 bit)	(16-bit)	
DAOCFG	800E0000	1000	Provides flexible scheme of
			outputting data
DAOCTL	800E0004	1001	Species clock ratios and generates
			interrupts
DAODAT0	800E0008	1002	Ch 0 data for its or PWM output
DAODAT1	800E000C	1003	Ch 1 data for its or PWM output
DAODAT2	800E0010	1004	Ch 2 data for its output
DAODAT3	800E0014	1005	Ch 3 data for its output
PWMCTL	800E0018	1006	PWM ramp up/down controls
CLKDIV	800E001C	1007	Divide values of mclk, sclk. pwmclk
SPCTL	800E0020	1008	Specifies controls of spdif
			transmitter

WSM Docket No.

SPCSA	800E0024	1009	Channel status of Ch A in
			spdif_output
SPCSB	800E0028	100A	Channel status of Ch B in
			spdif_output

Table 128: DAOCTL Register Bits Description

Field	Bits	Reset	Description
RESERVED	[31:24]	0	Accessible only by ARM. Read only.
FSINT	[23]	0	Sets when FS interrupt happens, needs clearing
			(0) by ARM/DSP.
FSINT EN	[22]	0	Enables FS interrupt.
CNTL_SEL	[21]	0	DSP Controls I2SOUT if 0, else microprocessor
		)	101 controls I2S, only microprocessor 101 writable
RST-I2SOUT	[20]	0	When 1, reset all registers except CNTL_SEL and
			RST-I2SOUT in this block
SLAVE	[19]	0	When 1, both SCLK and LRCLK are inputs, MCLK
			is ignored.
SLVCLKGT	[18]	1	When 1, gates clocks coming from M/SILRCLK
			pins to 0, for power saving
BURSTMOD	[17]	0	When 1, SCLK sent to I2SIN is from SCLK pin, but
			S/LRCLK used in I2SOUT is derived from
			AUDCLK or MCLK as specified by EXTMCLK

EDGE	[16]	0	When 0, transitions of LRCLK are aligned with
			falling edge of SCLK, and data bits are shifted out
			by falling edge of SCLK(i2sout); data bits are
			captured by rising edge of SCLK(i2sin). When 1,
			transitions of LRCLK are aligned with rising edge
			of SCLK, and data bits are shifted out by rising
			edge of SCLK(i2sout); data bits are captured by
			falling edge of SCLK(i2sin).
CLKEN	[15]	0	When 1, SCLK. LRCLK and MCLK(if
			ECTMCLK=0) are sent out. When 0, SCLK and
			LRCLK output are tristated. MCLK is on only when
			CLKEN = 1, and EXTMCLK = 0, otherwise MCLK
			output is tristated. CLKEN =1 is also used to start
			the audio data output from FIFO, both for PWM
			and I2S.
EXTMCLK	[14]	0	When 1, use external MCLK as input. When 0,
			I2SOUT generates MCLK as output with
			frequency of AUDCLK/(MCLKDIV+1).

SCLKRT	[13:11]	0	Ratio of SCLK w.r.t. Fs, both for I2SOUT and
OCLINI	[10.11]		I2SIN
			000: SCLK = 32Fs
			001: SCLK = 64Fs
			010: SCLK = 128Fs
			011: SCLK = 256Fs
			100: SCLK = AudClk
			101: SCLK = 48Fs
LRCLK_FLP	[10]	0	When 1, outputting(I2SOUT) and/or
			inputting(I2SIN) audio data is done with reversed
			LRCLK polarity
PWM_EN	[9]	0	When 1, PWM is enabled outputting Ch
			0(LRCLK=1) and Ch 1(LRCLK= 0). Assumption
			LRCLK FLP=0.
I2SOUT-EN	[8]	0	When 1, I2S OUT is enabled, # of channels output
			depends on ALLCH_EN, If ALLCH_EN=1, outputs
			Ch 0 and Ch 2(LRCLK=1) and Ch 1 and Ch 3
			(LRCLK=0). if ALLCH_EN=0, outputs Ch 0
			(LRCLK=1) and Ch 1 (LRCLK=0). Assumption
			LRCLK FLP=0.
ALLCH_EN	[7]	0	When 1, all 4 channel outputs enabled, else two
			channel outputs enabled

DAOTEST	[6]	0	When 1, DSP/ARM can read DAO FIFOs for test purposes
RSTFIFO	[5]	0	When and as long as 1, reset read and write pointers, FIFOCNT
FIFOCNT	[4:0]	0	Dipstick attached to Ch 0 FIFO, shows the number of wards waiting to be sent out in Ch 0 FIFO. Read only.

Table 129: DAOCFG Register Bits Description

Bits	Reset	Description
[31:24]	0	Accessible only by ARM.
[23]	1	Empty. Set high when Ch 0 FIFO is empty. Read
		only.
[22]	1	Had Empty. Set high when Ch 0 FIFO is half
		empty. Read only
[21]	0	When 1, FIFO Empty event generates interrupt.
[20]	0	When 1, FIFO Half Empty event generates
		interrupt.
[19:13]	0	# of SCLK delays between two successive
		samples. Meaningful only when I2SOUT is in 4
;		channel I2S OUT mode
[12:8]	0	# of bit per sample data (range O to 23) (=
		BITRES+1)
[7:0]	0	# of SCLK delay between LRCLK transition and
	[31:24] [23] [22] [21] [20] [19:13]	[31:24] 0 [23] 1 [22] 1 [21] 0 [20] 0 [19:13] 0

	1	$\neg$
	first sample data (ranging 0-256)	
1	mot cample data (ranging c 200)	- 1

Table 130: DAODATx Register Bits Description

Field	Bits	Reset	Description
RESERVED	[31:24]	0	Accessible only by ARM. Read only.
FIFODAT	[23:0]	X	Audio Data up to 24 bit per sample. MSB is always Bit [23]. LSB varies based upon the resolution of sample data (BITRES).

Table 131: CLKDIV Register Bits Description

Field	Bits	Reset	Description
RESERVED	[31:24]	0	Accessible only by ARM. Read only.
RESERVED	[23:16]	0	Unused. Read only.
PWMCLKDIV	[15:8]	0	(Divide+I value to create pwmclk out of and clk
SCLKDIV	[7:4]	0	(Divide+ 1) value to create sclk (SLAVE=0
			case ) out of mclk
MCLKDIV	[3:0]	0	(Divide +1) value to create mclk (EXTMCLK=0
			case) out of aud-clk

Table 132: SPCTL Register Bits Description

Field	Bits	Reset	Description
RESERVED	[31:24]	0	Reserved. Read-only. Accessible by
			microprocessor 101 only.
RESERVED	[23:10]	0	Reserved. Read-only.

WSM Docket No.

00 50000	101	10	14/ham O shaces and ally also shaces
SP_EXTCLK	[9]	0	When 0, chooses aud_clk, else chooses
			intem_master_Clk to generate sp_mdk
SP_MCLKRT	[8]	0	When SP EXTCLK=1, this bit specifies
			intem_master_Gk rate, 0 meaning 256Fs, 1
			meaning AudClk
SP_EN	[7]	0	When 1, SpdH_Transmitter is enabled, and
			I2SOUT is disabled, also used to gate
			sp_mclk.
V	[6]	0	Validity bit
U	[5]	0	User bit
SP_OE	[4]	0	SpdiF_output enable bit
CSMD	[3]	0	Channel Status Mode. When low, SPCS(A/B)
			is read once per block by transmitter. When
			high, they are read every 32 subframes.
BLKST	[2]	0	Block Start. A low to high transition specifies a
			new channel status block boundary. This bit is
			normally high, when low, the FIFO is disabled.
BYTCLK	[1]	0	Byte Clock. Status bit that is the channel
			status byte clock. It is high for 16 subframes
			and low for 16 subframes. Read only.
CBL	[0]	0	Channel status Block Clock. Status bit that
			goes high at the block boundary and low 64
			subframes later. Read only.

Table 133: SPCSA(SPCSB) Register Bits Description

Field	Bite	Reset	Description
RESERVED	[31:23]	0	Reserved. Read-only. Accessible by microprocessor 101 only.
XMTCSA(B)	[23:8]	0	Channel status for Ch_0(Ch_1). The LSB is shifted out first.
RESERVED	[7:0]	0	Reserved. Read-only.

Table 134: PWMCTL Register Bits Description

Fields	Bit	Reset	Description
RESERVED	[31:24]	0	Accessible only by ARM. Read only.
RESERVED	[23:6]	0	Unused. Read only.
R_UP_DONE	[5]	0	When 1, means ramping up of PWM outputs
			completed. Read only.
R_DOWN_DONE	[4]	1	When 1, means ramping down of PWM outputs
_			completed 8 PWM engine goes to reset state.
			Read only.
PWM_OUT_EN	[3]	0	When 1, PWM_drivers output audio data, else
			they are tri-stated.
FAST-START	[2]	0	When 1, ramp-up procedure is by-passed and
			r_up_done gets set by PWM_ENGINE
			immidiately after R_UP is set. Used only in test
			mode to facilitate fast testing as ramp-up takes
			1 sec to be done.

WSM Docket No.

R_UP	[1]	0	When 1, PWM engine comes out of reset and
			starts ramping up.
R_DOWN	[0]	0	When 1, ramping down starts.

Table 135: List of Registers in I2SIN Block

NAME	ARM ADD(32 bit)	DSP ADD(16 bit)	DESCRIPTION
DAICTL	800E0040	1010	Provides flexible scheme to input data
DAISTS	800E0044	1011	Reflects status of the two input FIF0
CMPSTS	800E0048	1012	Reflects status of unified FIFO in Compressed Mode
DAIDATO	800E004C	1013	Ch 0 input data
DAIDATI	800E0050	1014	Ch 1 input data
CMPDAT	800E0054	1015	Input data in Compressed mode
SREGDAT	800E0058	1016	Shift Register inputting data

Table 136: DAICTL\_Register Bits Description

Bits	Reset	Description
[31:24]	0	Accessible only by ARM. Read only
[23]	0	When 1, logic high on Half-Empty pin (in Bursty
		Compressed mode) means halt Empty. When 0, half
		empty.
[22]	0	When 1, compressed data is expected to be synced
	[31:24]	[31:24] 0 [23] 0

WSM Docket No.

			with LRCLK, thus valid data. Window can be
			specifled using PREDLY, BITRES. When 0,
			compressed data is expected to arrive in burst with
			SCLK, no LRCLK sync is needed, thus PREDLY 8
			BITRES are meaningless. Applicable only if
			CHANMOD has been set to 1.
DAITEST	[21]	0	When 1, ARM/DSP can write to the input FIFOs.
CNTL SEL	[20]	0	When 1, microprocessor 101 controls I2SIN, else
			DSP controls I2SIN.
RST-I2SIN	[19]	0	When, and as long as 1, reset registers except
			CNTL_SEL and RST-I2SIN
FULL_INT EN	[18]	0	When 1, FULL event contributes to I2SIN_INT
			interrupt
HFULL_INT_EN	[17]	0	When 1, HFULL event contributes to I2SIN_INT
į			interrupt
I2SIN-EN	[16]	0	When 0, I2S_IN is tristated. When 1, audio_dc to
			I2SIN is enabled.
PREDLY	[15:6]	0	# of SCLK delays between two successive samples.
BITRES	[7:3]	0	# of bits per sample data (range 1 to 23) which is
			equal to BITRES+1
CHANMOD	[2]	0	When 1, input data arrives in compressed mode.
			Whether data is synced with LRCLK is defined by
			COMPMOD. When 0, input data arrives synced with
			LRCLK, Ch 0 data is expected when LRCLK=1, and
			the state of the s

			Ch 1 data is expected when LRCLK=0, Polarity of
			LRCLK ws.t expected data can be reversed by
			setting LRCLK_FLP bit Of DAOCTL.
LLOOPTEST	[1]	0	When 1, take I2S-OUT as input source instead of
			I2S_IN, test mode
RSTFIFO	[0]	0	When 1, reset read and write pointer for both the
			FIFOs

Table 137: DAISTS Register Bits Description

Field	Bits	Reset	Osscription
RESERVED	[31:24]	0	Accessible only by ARM.
RESERVED	[23:15]	0	Unused
FSINT	[16]	0	On FS interrupt, cleared by ARM/DSP
FSINT EN	[15]	0	When get, FS interrupt is enabled.
START_AUD_IN	[14]	0	When 1, shfreg will start to input audio data from next
			posedge (neg edge if edge=1 in DAOCTL) of sdk
HFULL1	[13]	0	When 1, DAIDAT1 FIFO is hall full.
FULL1	[12]	0	When 1, DAIDATI FIFO is full
FIFOCNTI	[11:7]	0	Dipstick attached to DAIDATI, # of data available
HFULLO	[6]	0	When 1, DAIDAT0 FIFO is hall full
FULL0	[5]	0	When 1, DAIDAT0 FIFO is full
FIFOCNT0	[4:0]	0	I Dipstick attached to DAIDAT0, # of data available

Table 138: CMPSTS Register Bits Description

WSM Docket No.

Field	Bits	Reset	Description	
RESERVED	[31:24]	0	Accessible by microprocessor 101 only.	
RESERVED	[23:13]	0	Unused	
SREGPTR	[12:8]	0	# of valid bits in SREGDAT, counting from LSB	
			being 0	
HFULL	[7]	0	When 1, unified FIFO is half full	
FULL	[6]	0	When 1, unified FIFO is full	
FIFOCNT	[5:0]	0	# of words residing in unified FIFO	

Table 139: Audio Data Input Register Bits Description

Field	Bits	Reset	Description
RESERVED	[31:24]	0	Accessible by microprocessor 101 only. Read only.
FIFODAT	[23:0]	X	Audio input data up to 24 bit per sample. LSB is always Bit[0]. MSB varies based upon the resolution of sample data (BITRES). Only DAIDATx are writable and only in DAITEST mode.

Table 140: STC Control Register (STC\_CTL, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x8010 0000, DSP Addr: 0x4000)

Name	Bits	Description
STC EN	[23]	SC Enable: Reset Value 0
RESERVED	[22:20]	RESERVED: VAL 0
STC_INT S	[19]	Sticky interrupt bit set when stc cnt = 0 and stc_en; rst val = 0; cleaned by writing 0.

WSM Docket No.

RESERVER	[22:2]	RESERVED: VAL 0
STC_CLK_SEL	[1:0]	Clocks Source Selector:
		00: STC CLK : memdk
		01: STC_CLK :AudClk
		10:STC_CLK:USBclk
		11 : external clk

Table 141: STC Counter0 Register (STC\_COUNTER0, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x8010\_0004, DSP Addr: 0x4001)

Name	Bits	Description
STC_COUNTER0	[23:0]	Value of STC counter (high 24 bits)

Table 142: STC Counter1 Register (STC\_COUNTERI, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x8010\_0008, DSP Addr: 0x4002)

Name	Bits	Description	
	[23:9]	RESERVED: Val 0	
STC_COUNTER1I	[8:0]	Value of STC counter (lower 9 tits)	

Table 143: STC Divider Register (STC\_DIV, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x8010\_000C, DSP Addr: 00003)

Name	Bits	Description		
RESERVER	[23:18]	RESERVED: VAL 0		
STC DIV_VAL	[15:0]	STC clock divider value. 0 => Divide/1		

Table 144: STC Shadow Register (STC\_CNTR\_SHDW, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x8010\_0010, DSP Addr: 0x4004)

Name	Bits	Description
	[23:9]	RESERVED: Val 0
STC_CNTR_SHDW	[8:0]	Value of STC counter (lower 9 bits) at time of
_		last COUNTERI read. Read only

Table 145: GPIO Data Register (GPIODR microprocessor 101 Address: 0x8002\_0000)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default Value	Description
GPIOD	[31:0]	RW	0	GPIO Data Register. Bit[1] corresponds to pin GPIO[i] (i=0,31). When read, returns the current status on the physical GPIO pins. When write, it sets the value on the GPIO pins if the pins are chosen to be GPIO output mode.

Table 146: GPIO Data Direction Register (GPIODDR microprocessor 101 Address: 0x8002\_0004)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default Value	Description
GPIOOD	[31:0]	RW	0	GPIO Data Direction. When Bit[i] is 1, pin GPIO[i] is output; When Bit4 is 0. pin GPI014 is Input. (i=31)

WSM Docket No.

Table 147: GPIO MUX Selector Register (GPIOMUX microprocessor 101 Address: 0x8002\_0008)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
			Value	
GPIOMUX	[31:8]	R/W	0	GPIO pin mux selection. When Bit[7] is
				1, pin GPIO[i] isGPIO function; When
				Bit[i] is 0, the GPIO function of pin
				GPIO[i] is overwritten by the other
	1			corresponding function on that particular
				pin. (i=831)
GPIOMUX	[7:4]	RW	1	GPIO pin mux selection. When Bit[i] is 1,
				pin GPIO[i] is GPIO function: When Bit[i]
				is 0. the GPIO function of pin GPIO[i] is
		]		overwritten by the other corresponding
				function on that particular pin. (i=47)
GPIOMUX	[3:0]	RW	0	GPI pin mux selection. For GPIO[3:0],
				the value GPIO- MUX[3:0] does NOT
				affect the pin function since they are
				dedicated GPIOs.

Table 148: GPIO Interrupt Mask Register (GPIOINTMSK microprocessor 101 Address: Ox8002\_OOOC)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
			Value	

WSM Docket No.

GPIOINTMSK	[31:01]	RW	0	GPIO Interrupt Mask. When Bit[i] is set
				and GPIOINTEN is also set, value 1 on
				pin GPIO[i] generates interrupt to ARM.
				(i=031)

Table 149: GPIO Interrupt Enable Register (GPIOINTEN microprocessor 101 Address: 0x8002\_0010)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
			Value	
CUSDAT	[31:18]	R/W	0	16 bit custom data. used for various purpose. When bit [31:29] are set. GPIO[2:0] are routed to USB block as D+/D-/XverData for testing purpose in order to bypass the analog transceiver. By setting bits[31:18] individually, the internal clocks are sent to the GPIO pins as output for visibility instead of normal GPIO function.
	[15:1]		0	Reserved
GPIOINTEN	[0]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Enable. When, interrupt generation is disabled. When 1, value 1 on any unmasked (GPIOINTMSK[Q] pin GPO[[i] generates interrupt to ARM. (i=0,31)

WSM Docket No.

Table 150: GPIO Interrupt Event Select Register 0 (GPIOINTESO microprocessor 101 Address: 0x8002\_0014)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default Value	Description
GPIOIES[15]	[31:30]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[15]. Sensitivity is as in
				GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[14]	[29:28]	RIV1f	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
		-		GPIO[14]. Sensitivity is as in
				GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[13]	[27:28]	RW	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[13]. Sensitivity is as in
				GPIOIES[O].
GPIOIES[12]	[25:24]	RJW	0	GPIO Intertupt Event Select for GPIO[2].
				Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[O].
GPtOIES[11]	[23:22]	RNV	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[11]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[10]	[21:20]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[10]. Sensitivity is as in
				GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[9]	[19:18)	RAN	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[9j.
				Sensitivity is as in GPIOS[0].
GPIOIES[8]	[17:18]	RW	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[8].
				Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES(0).

WSM Docket No.

	1 - 1 - 1 - 1			ODIO International Coloret for CDIO[7]
GPIOIES[7]	[15:14]	RW	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[7].
				Sensitivly is as in GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[8]	[13:12]	R/W	0	GPiO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[8].
				Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[5]	[11:10]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[5].
				Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[O].
GPIOIES[4]	[9:8]	RW	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[4].
				Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0[.
GPIOIES[3]	[7:6]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[3].
				Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[2]	[5:4]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[2].
				Sensitivty is as in GPIOIES[01]
GPIOIES[1]	[3:2]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[1].
				Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[01.
GPIOIES[0]	[1:0]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for GPIO[0].
				00: GPIO pin active high:
				01: GPIO pin active low:
				10: GPIO pin rising edge:
				11: GPIO pin falling edge:
1		1		Landard Control of the Control of th

Table 151: GPIO Interrupt Event Select Register 1 (GPIOINTES1 microprocessor 101 Address: 0x8002\_0018)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
			Value	

WSM Docket No.

GPIOIES[31]	[31:30]	RW	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[31]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0]
GPIOIES[30]	[29:28]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[30]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[O]
GPIOIES[29]	[27:26]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[29]. Sensitity is as in GPIOIES[O]
GPIOIES[28]	[25:24]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[28]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[O]
GPIOIES[27]	[23:22]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[27]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0]
GPIOIES[26]	[21:20]	RIVV	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[26]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0]
GPIOIES[25]	[19:18]	RIYII	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPI0[25]. Sensitivity is as in GPI0IES[0]
GPIOIES[24]	[17:16]	RW	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[24]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0]
GPIOIES[23]	[15:14)	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[23]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[22]	[13:12]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[22]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[21]	[11:10)	RW	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[21]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[20]	[9:8]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[20]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[0].

GPIOIES[19]	[7:6]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[19]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[01
GPIOIES[18]	[5:4]	RW	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[18]. Sensit'rvty is as in GPIOIES[0].
GPIOIES[17]	[3:2]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[17]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[O]
GPIOIES[6]	[1:0]	R/W	0	GPIO Interrupt Event Select for
				GPIO[16]. Sensitivity is as in GPIOIES[01

Table 152: GPIO Interrupt Event Status Register (GPIOINTST microprocessor 101 Address: 0x8002\_001C)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default Value	Description
			value	
GPIOINTST[31:0]	[31:0]	RW	0	GPIO interrupt event status. Bit[i]
				corresponding to GPIO[i]. When the
				selected event occurs, the
				corresponding bit will be asserted by
				the event. Microprocessor 101 interrupt
				subroutine and clears the bit in order to
				avoid extra interrupt.

Table 153: GPIO Test Clock Enable Register (GPIOTCER microprocessor 101 Address: 0x8002\_0040 -0x8002\_007C)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
		<u> </u>		

WSM Docket No.

		Value	
[31:01]	RW		When in cleared, a test clock enable is
			produced when this register is
			accessed (read or write).

Table 154: GPIO Test Control Register (GPIOTCR microprocessor 101 Address: 0x8002\_0080)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
			Value	
	[31:5]		0	Reserved.
TESTINPSEL	[4]	R/W	0	The bit selects the source of primary
				input. When bit is 0, the primary inputs
				are taken from the external pads
				(normal operation). When the bit is 1.
				the values programed in GPI-OTISR
				are used as the inputs to the GPIO.
TESTRST	[3]	R/W	0	When the bit is set, a reset is asserted
				throughout the module, EXCEPT the
				test registers.

REGCLK	[21]	RW	0	0=Strobe cock mode is selected which
			ŧ	generates a test clock enable on
				every AMBA/APB access (read/write)
				to the block, allows testing with less
				test vectors when testing functions
				such as counters. 1 =Registered clock
				mode is selected which only
				·
				generates a test clock enable on an
				AMBA/PB access to the GPIOT- CER
				location. Ths bit has no effect unless
				bit[0]and bit[1] are both set to 1.
TESTCLKEN	[1]	R/W	0	Selects the source of test clock:
				O=The internal clock enable is
				continuously HIGH. 1=The internal test
				clock enable is selected, test clocks
				are enabled for only period of the input
				clock per AMBA/ APB access. The
				internal clock enable mode depends
				on the setting of Bit[21]. This bit has no
				effect unless bit 0 is set to 1.
TESTEN	[0]	RW	0	0=Normal operation mode is selected.
				1 =Test mode is selected. Bit[1] and
				Bit[2] have no effect unless bit[O] is 1.

Table 155: GPIO Test Input Stimulus Register (GPIOTISR microprocessor 101 Address:

WSM Docket No.

## 0x8002\_0084)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default Value	Description
GPIO	[31:0]	R/W	0	Programmable test stimulus to primary input of GPIO when TESTINPSEL is set to 1.

228

### Table 156: Soft Cache Control (SCCREG, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x6000\_4000)

Bits	Description
[0]	Soft cache enable
[2:1]	Soft cache size (00: 2k; 01: 4k: 10: 8k; 11:16k)
[30:3]	Reserved. '0' when read.
[31]	Soft Cache Map mode. When 0 (default), the cache starts from
	internal microprocessor 101 RAM offset 0. When 1, the soft cache
	starts from microprocessor 101 RAM offset Ox7FFF.

### Table 157: Abort Address (ABRTADDR, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x6000\_4004)

Bits	Description
[31:0]	Address that caused the abort (softcache)

### Table 158: Abort Status (ABRTSTATUS, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x6000\_4008)

	Bits	Description
Ì	[0]	Set by soft cache hardware cleared on miss. Indicates soft cache
		miss

WSM Docket No.

[1]	Set by security hardware, cleared on read. Indicates security
	abort.

Table 159: Soft Cache Tags (SCTAG0..15, microprocessor 101 Addr. 0x6000\_400C..4048)

Bits	Description
[6:0]	Reserved. 0 when read.
[20:7]	Tag. Bits 7, 8, 9 are, ignored depending on cache sae.
[21]	Tag valid. '0' indicates invalid.
[31:22]	Reserved. '0' when read.

Table 160: Security Abort Address (SECABTADDR, microprocessor 101 Addr: Ox6000\_404C)

Bits	Description
[31:0]	Address that caused the abort (Security)

Table 161: schist: Soft Cache History (SCHIST, microprocessor 101 Addr 0x6000\_4050):

Bits	Description					
[31:4]	Reserved.					
[15:12]	Fourth last hit tag ID.					
[11:8]	Third last hit tag ID.					
[7:4]	Second last hit tag ID.					
[3:0]	Last hit tag ID.					

WSM Docket No.

Table 162: Pause Register (ARM Address 0x8008\_0000)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
PAUSE	[31:0]	W	0	Write any data to this register will cause the activity on main AHB to pause. Read always returns 0. Any interrupt will bring it out of pause mode.

Table 163: Microprocessor 101 Sleep Register (ARM Address Ox8008\_003C)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
ARMSLEEP	[31:01]	W	0	Write any data to this register will cause the
	-			activity of microprocessor 101 core to pause.
				Read always returns 0. Any interrupt will
				bring it out of ARM Sleep mode:

Table 164: Remap Register (ARM Address 0x8008\_0020)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
	[31:2]	R	0	Reserved.
OPMOD1	[28:24]	R	1	Reset operation mode 1. At the power-on-reset and/or user-reset, the value of pins TRSTTST[1:0] and PORTST[1:0] are latched to this field. Bit[25:24]: PORTST[1:0]; Bit[27:28]: TST[1:0]: Bit[28]: TRST,
OPMODO	[19:16]	R	1	Reset operation mode 0. At the power-on- reset and/or user-reset, the value of pins GPIO[3:0] is set to this field.

WSM Docket No.

TICEN	[5]	R/W	0	When set, enable the TIC interlace while it is allowed.
JTAGEN	[4]	R/W	0	When set, enables microprocessor 101
				JTAG feature while it is allowed.
REMAPMOD	[1:0]	R/W	0	ARM address remap mode:
				00: Address Mode 0. [Default]
<del>)</del>	ļ			01: Address Mode 1.
				10: Address Mode 2;
				11: Not supported.
1	L	1	1	

Table 165: Chip Super Stand-by Register (ARM Address 0x8008\_0038)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
	[31:1]	R	0	Reserved.
STBY	[0]	RW	0	The value of bit[O] is driven to the pin STBYn,
				which can be used to control an external
				power-FET to switch on/off the supplies. With
				default value 0, it is used to control a p-
				channel FET [logic low to turn on the switch).
				Write 1 to this bit will turn off the FET. The bit
				is cleared by WAKEUP pin asserting high.

Table 166: Identification Register (ARM Address 0x8008\_0010)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
	i			i

BND	[31]	R	_	Read returns the BOND pin value for
				the chip.
	[30:8]	R	0	Reserved.
IDENTIFICATION	[7:0]	R	0	Identification flags.

# Table 167: Reset Status Register (ARM Address 0x8008\_0030)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
	[31:8]	R	0	Reserved.
RESETSTATUS	[7:0]	R/W	0x01	Reset Status. The bit[0] is set high on reset, low when cleared. Bit[0] can not be set high by software. Write 7'b1to bit[7:1] will set the value of RESETSTATUS[7:1].

# Table 168: Reset Status Clear Register (ARM Address 0x8008\_0034)

Name	sit	Туре	Default	Description
	[31:8]	R	0	Reserved.
RESETSTATUS	[7:0]	W	N/A	Reset Status clear. Write 7'b1 to Bit[7:1]
				will clear the RESETSTATUS[7:1] in
				Reset Status Register.

# Table 169: Pad Pull Resistor Control Register 1 (ARM Address 0x8008\_0004)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
	[31:0]	R/W	OxFFFF_FFFF	Individual pad pull resistor control.

WSM Docket No.

Table 170: Pad Pull Resistor Control Register 2 (ARM Address Ox8008\_OOOC)

Name	Bit	. 76.	Default	Description
	[31:0]	R/W	OxFFFF_FFF	Individual pad pull resistor control.

Table 171: Pad Pull Resistor Control Register 3 (ARM Address 0x8008\_0014)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
	[31:0]	R/W	OxFFFF_FFF	Individual pad pull resistor control.

# Table 172: Pad Pull Resistor Control Register 4 (ARM Address 0x8008\_001 C)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description	
	[31:0]	R/W	OxFFFF_FFFF	Individual pad pull resistor control.	

MISSING TABLE 173 to 176

Table 177: microprocessor 101 RAM Weak-Write Control Register (ARM Addr. 0x6000\_3000)

Name	am	Туре	Default	Description
	[31:4]			Reserved.
a ram weak_wr1_b _lo	[3]	R/W	1	RAM low subportion weak1 bit

WSM Docket No.

a ram_weak_wr0_b_lo	[2]	R/W	1	RAM low subportion weak0 bit
a ram_weak_wr1_b_hi	[1]	R/W	1 -	RAM high subportim weak1[bit]
a ram_weak_wr0_b_hi	[0]	RW	1	RAM high subportion weak0 bit.

Table 178: DSP RAM Weak-Write Control Register (DSP Addr: 0x5000)

Name	Bit	Туре	OHault	Description
	[23:18]			Reserved.
gram_weak_wr1_b_l0	[15]	R/W	1	Global RAM low subportion weak1 bit
gram_weak_wr0_blo	[14]	R/W	1	Global RAM low subportion weak0 bit.
gram_weak_wr1 b_hi	[13]	RW	1	Global RAM high subportion weakl bit.
gram_weak_wr0_b_hi	[12]	R/W	1	Global RAM high subportion weak0 bit.
pram_weak_wr1 b_lo	[11]	R/W	1 "	Program RAM low subportion weakl bit.
pram_weak_wr0_b_lo	[10]	RW	1 -	Program RAM low subportion weak0 bit
pram_weak_wr1_b_hi	[9]	R/W	1	Program RAM high subportion weak1 bit.i

	T			
pram-weak_wr0_b_hi	[8]	R/W	1	Program RAM high subportion
				weak0 bit.
xram_weak_wr1_b_lo	[7]	RW	1	X RAM low subportion
				weak1 bit.
xram weak_wr0_b	[6]	RW	1	X RAM low subportion
				weak0 bit.
xram-weak_wr1_b_hi	[5]	RW	1	X RAM high subponion
				weak1 bit.
xram weak-wr0-b_hr	[4]	R/W	1	X RAM high subportion
				weak0 bit.
yram_weak_wri_ b_b	[3]	R/W	1	Y RAM low subportion
				weak1 bit.
yram weak_wr0_b_lo	[2]	R/W	1	Y RAM low subportion
				weak0 bit.
yram-weak_wrl_b_hi	[1]	RW	1	Y RAM high subportion
				weak1 bit.
yram weak_wr0_b_hi	[0]	R/W	1	Y RAM high subportion
				weak0 bit.

Table 179: APSRAM (ARM RAM Access Protection Register, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x6000\_5000)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
APSRAM	[31:0]	RW	0	Access Protection to microprocessor 101 RAM.
				When 0, the access to microprocessor 101
f	1	1	1	RAM is allowed only in Privillege Mode. The bit
				value can be modified only in Privilege Mode.
			Each bit controls each 1 K-Byte space of total	
WSM Docket No.		32K- Byte microprocessor 101 RAM. Bit[0] is		
2836- P139US			responding to the 1 K-Byte from 0x0000_0000	
			to 00000_03FF and bit[1] is for 0x0000_0400 to	
				0x0000_07FF, and so on.

Table 180-APPERIP (ARM Peripheral Access Protection Register, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x6000\_5004)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
	[31:8]	R	0	Reserved
APPERIP	[17:0]	RNV	0	Access Protection to microprocessor 101
				Peripheral Space. When 0, the access to the
				corresponding Peripheral block is allowed only in
				Privillege Mode. The bit value can be modified
				only in Privillege Mode.
				APPERIP[0 : USB block;
				APPERIP[1]: UART
				APPERIP[2] : GPIO:
				APPERIP[3] : Battery/volume checker (ADC);
				APPERIP[4] : SPI;
				APPERIP[5] : 12C;
				APPERIP[6] : Security Fuse:
				APPERIP[7]: System Clocks Control:
				APPERIP[8] : Remap/Pause Control;
				APPERIP[9] : RTC;

	APPERIP[10]:Timer1;
	APPERIP[11]:Timer2;
	APPERIP[12]:Timer3;
	APPERIP[13]:Interrupt ControNer:
	APPERIP[14]:I2S/PWW
	APPERIP[15]iPC;
	APPERIP[16]:DSP TimeNCounter;
	APPERIP[17]DSP Debugs,;

Table 181: APCS (ARM External Memory Access Protection Register, microprocessor 101 Addr: 0x6000\_5008)

Name	Bit	Туре	Default	Description
	[31:4]	R	0	Reserved
APCS	[3:0]	R/W	0	Access Protection to microprocessor 101  External Memory. When 0. the access to microprocessor 101 RAM is allowed only in Privilege Mode. The bit value can be modified only in Privilege Mode. APCS[O]: The first
				external memory bank controlled by CSO: APCS[1]: The first external memory bank controlled by CSI; APCS[2]: The first external memory bank controlled by CS2; APCS[3]: The first external memory bank controlled by CS3;

Table 182: Power Planes and Their Functional Blocks

WSM Docket No.

Power Plane	Supply Pins	Functional Blocks
Stand-By	STBYVDD331	RTC, 32.768KHz on-chip oscillator, pin
(3.3V)		RTCTALO and RTCTALI,
	STBYGND33	PRSTn, RSTOn, STBYn, WAKEUP
Quiet-Analog	QVDD331QGND33	PLL. ADC analog, pin MLPFLT/MTPFLT
(3.3V)		and ULPFLT/UTPFLT, and
		VIN<1:0>.
PWMxVDD	PWMLVDD/PWMRVDD	PWM Output Driver Pins: PWMLVDO,
(3.3V)		PWMRVDD. PWML. PWMR.
	and PWMLGNDIPWM	
	RGND	
Pad-Ring	VDDringlGNDring	All the pads and voltage step-up circuitry
(3.3V)		in the core logic. except
,		the ones listed above for Oscillator. PLL,
		ADC and PWM.
Core-Logic	VDOcae/GNDca	All the internal functional blocks except
(1.5V 2.5V)		the ones listed above, for RTC,
		PLL, OSC, ADC analog.

Table 183: microprocessor 101 Memory Remap Mode 0 (Default) Segment Allocation (32bit/word, byte addressing)

ARM Memory Address	Size (Byte)	Function Block
(Hex)		
0000 0000 - 0000_2FFF	12 K	Abased Internal microprocessor 101 ROM

WSM Docket No.

		(6Kx16)
0000 3000-1FFF FFFF		Reserved
2000 0000 - 2000_7FFF	32 K	Internal microprocessor 101 RAM (8Kx32)
2000 8000-2FFF FFFF		Reserved
3000 0000 - 3000 7FFF	32 K	Global RAM (81kx32) byte-addressable from
		ARM)
3000_8000-3001-FFFF		Reserved
3002_0000 - 3002-3FFF	16 K	DSP DataO RAM (41kx24) word
		addressable only; microprocessor 101 bus
		bit[31:24] are not provided by DataO RAM
3002_4000-3002_FFFF		Reserved
3003_0000 - 3003-FFFF	64 K	DSP DataO ROM (16kx24) word
		addressable only; microprocessor 101 bus
		bit[31:24] are not provided by DataO ROM)
3004_0000 - 30W3FFF	16 K	DSP Data1 RAM (41kx24)word addressable
		only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31-24] are
		not provided by Data 1 RAM)
3004 4000-3004-FFFF		Reserved
3005_0000 - 3005_FFFF	64 K	DSP Data1 ROM (16kx24)word addressable
		only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31:24] are
		not provided by Data 1 ROM)
3006 0000 - 3006 3FFF	16 K	DSP Program RAM (41kx32 word
		addressable only)
3006 4000 - 3FFF FFFF		Reserved

RAM Memory
e Control
Controller
on
ROM (6kx18).
ted by Soft
cuit

8007 0000 - 8007 FFFF	64 K	Clock Control
8008_0000 - 8008 FFFF	64 K	Remap/Pause Cantror
8009 0000-8009 FFFF	64 K	RTC*
800A_0000 - 800A_FFFF	64 K	Timerl
8008 0000 - 8008 FFFF	64 K	Timer2
800C 0000 - 800C_FFFF	64 K	Timer3
800D 0000 - 800D FFFF	64 K	Interrupt Controller
800E 0000 - 800E FFFF	64 K	12SIPWM
800E 0000 - 800F FFFF	64 K	IPC
8010 0000 - 8010-FFFF	64 K	DSP Timer and Counter
8011 0000 - 8011 FFFF	64 K	DSP Debugger
8012_0000-FFFF FFFF		Reserved
ARM Memory Address	Size (Byte)	Function Block
(Hex)		
0000 0000 - 0000 7FFF	32K	Internal microprocessor 101 RAM (8Kx32)
0000 8000-1FFF FFFF		Reserved
2000 0000 - 2000 7FFF	32 K	Internal microprocessor 101 RAM (8Kx32)
2000 8000-2FFF FFFF		Reserved
3000 0000 - 3000 7FFF	32 K	Global RAM (8Kx32)byte-addressable from
		ARM)
3000_8000-3001_FFFF		Reserved
3002_0000 - 3002_3FFF	16 K	DSP Data0RAM (4Kx24) word addressable
		only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31:24] are
		not provided by Data0 RAM

3002 4000-3002 FFFF		Reserved
3003 0000 - 3003-FFFF	64 K	DSP Data0ROM (16Kx24) word addressable
		only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31:24] are
		not provided by DataO ROM)
3004 0000 - 3004_3FFF	16 K	DSP Data 1 RAM (4Kx24) word addressable
_		only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31:24] are
		not provided by Data 1 RAM)
3004_4000 - 3004-FFFF		Reserved
3005_0000 - 3005-FFFF	64 K	DSP Data1 ROM (16Kx24) word addressable
<del>_</del>		only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31:24] are
		not provided by Data1 ROM)
3006 0000 - 3006 3FFF	16K	DSP Program RAM (4Kx32 word
		addressable only)
3006_4000-3FFF FFFF		Reserved
4000 0000 - 5FFF FFFF	512 M	Remappable External Flash/SRAM Memory
6000 0000 - 6000 OFFF	4 K	DMA Configuration Registers
6000 1000 - 6000 1 FFF	4 K	LCD Display Interface
6000 2000 - 6000 2FFF	4 K	External Flash/SRAM Interface Control
		Registers
6000 3000 - 6000 3FFF	4 K	RAM Retention Test Controller
6000 4000 - 6000 4FFF	4 K	Soft Cache Control Registers
6000 5000 - 6000 5FFF	4 K	ARM Security Access Protection
6000 6000 - 6000 6FFF	4 K	ARM7TDMI Test Registers
6000 7000-6FFF FFFF	•	Reserved

7000 0000 7000 0FFF	401/	Internal microprocessor 101 ROM (6kx16)
7000 0000 - 7000 2FFF	12 K	
7000 3000 - 77FF-FFF		Reserved
7800 0000 - 781 F FFFF	2 M	Vrtual Memory Space supported by Soft
		Cache.
7820 0000-7FFF FFFF		Reserved
8000 0000 - 8000 FFFF	64 K	USB Device Port
8001 0000-8001-FFFF	64 K	DART
8002_0000 - 8002 FFFF	64 K	GPIO
8003_0000 - 8003 FFFF	64 K	Battery Volumn Checker
8004 0000 - 8004 FFFF	64 K	SPI for Serial Media Interface
8005 FFFF - 8005 FFFF	64 K	SSI Master Port
8006 0000 - 8006 FFFF	64 K	Security Fuse and Control Circuit
8007 0000 - 8007-FFFF	64 K	Clocks Control
8008_0000 - 8008 FFFF	64 K	Remap Control
8009 0000-8009_FFFF	64 K	RTC
800A 0000 - 800A FFFF	64 K	Timerl
8008 0000 - 8008- FFFF	64 K	Timer2
800C 0000 - 800C FFFF	64 K	Timer3
8000 0000 - 800D FFFF	64 K	Interrupt Controller
800E 0000 - 800E FFFF	64 K	I2SIPWW
800F0000 - 800F FFFF	64 K	IPC
8010 0000 - 8010_FFFF	64 K	DSP Timer and Counter
8011 0000 - 8011 FFFF	64 K	DSP Debugger
8012 0000-FFFF FFFF		Reserved

Table 185: Memory Remap Mode 2 Segment Allocation (32bit-word, byte addressing)

ARM Memory Address (Hex)	Size (Byb)	Function Block
0000 0000-1FFF FFFF	512 M	Alleged External FlastVSRAM Memory
2000_0000 - 2000 7FFF	32 K	Internal microprocessor 101 RAM (8Kx32)
2000 8000-2FFF FFFF		Reserved
3000_0000 - 3000 7FFF	32 K	Global RAM (8Kx32 byte-addressable from ARM)
3000_8000-3001-FFFF		Reserved
3002_0000 - 3002-3FFF	16 K	DSP Data0 RAM (4Kx24 word addressable only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31:24] are not provided by DataO RAM
3002 4000-3002_FFFF		Reserved
3003_0000 - 3003-FFFF	64 K	DSP Data0 ROM (16Kx24 word addressable only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31:24] are not provided by Data0 ROM)

### Table 186MM Memory Remap Mode 2 Segment Allocation (32bit/word, byte addressing)

ARM Memory Address	Size (Byte)	Function Block
(Hex)		
3004_0000 - 3004-3FFF	16 K	DSP Data RAM (4Kx24 word addressable
		only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31:24] are
		not provided by Data 1 RAM )

3004 4000-3004_FFFF		Reserved
3005_0000 - 3005_FFFF	64 K	DSP Data 1 ROM (16Kx24 word addressable
		only; microprocessor 101 bus bit[31:24] are
		not provided by Data ROM)
3006 0000 - 3006 3FFF	16 K	DSP Program RAM (4Kx32 word
		addressable only)
3006 4000-3FFF FFFF		Reserved
4000 0000 - 5FFF FFFF	512 M	Remappable External Flash/SRAM Memory
6000 0000 - 6000 OFFF	4 K	DMA Contigurration Registers
6000 1000 - 6000 1 FFF	4 K	LCD Display Interface
6000_2000 - 6000 2FFF	4 K	External Flash/SRAM Interface Control
		Registers
6000 3000 - 6000 3FFF	4 K	RAM Weak-Write Test Controller
6000_4000 - 6000 4FFF	4 K	Soft Cache Control Registers
6000 5000 - 6000 5FFF	4 K	ARM Security Access Protection
6000 6000 - 6000_6FFF	4 K	ARM7TDM) Test Registers
6000 7000-6FFF FFFF		Reserved
7000_0000 - 7000-2FFF	12 K	Internal microprocessor 101 ROM (8kx16)
7000 3000 - 77FF-FFF		Reserved
7800 0000 - 781 F FFFF	2 M	Virtual Memory Space supported by Soft
		Cache.
7820 0000-7FFF FFFF		Reserved
8000 0000 - 8000-FFFF	64 K	USS Device Port
8001 0000-8001-FFFF	64 K	UART

8002 0000 - 8002 FFFF	64 K	GPIO
8003 0000 - 8003 FFFF	64 K	Batery Volume Checker
8004 0000 - 8004 FFFF	64 K	SPI for Serial Media Interface
8005 FFFF - 8005 FFFF	64 K	SSI Master
8006 0000 - 8006 FFFF	64 K	Security Fuse and Control Circuit
8007 0000 - 8007 FFFF	64 K	Clocks Contror
8008 0000 - 8008 FFFF	64 K	Remap Pause ControL
8009 0000-8009 FFFF	64 K	RTC.
800A 0000 - 800A_FFFF	64 K	Timer1
800B_0000 - 8008_FFFF	64 K	Timer2
800C 0000 - 800C FFFF	64 K	Tmer3
800D 0000 - 800D_FFFF	64 K	Interrupt Controller
800E_0000 - 800E_FFFF	64 K	I2S/PWW
800E 0000 - 800F FFFF	64 K	IPC
8010 0000 - 8010-FFFF	64 K	DSP Timer and Counter
8011 0000 - 8011 FFFF	64 K	DSP Debugger
8012_0000-FFFF FFFF		Reserved

Table 187: DSP Program Memory (32bit/word, word addressing)

Address (Hex)	Size	Defirdtion	
0000 – 0FFF	4K x 32	DSP Program RAM	
1000 – 7FFF		Reserved	
8000 – 9FFF	8K x 32	Global RAM	
A000 – FFFF		Reserved	

WSM Docket No.

Table 188: DSP DataO Memory (24bit/word, word addressing)

Address (Hex)	Size	Defnition	
0000 - 0FFF	4K x 24	DSP X/Data0 RAM	
1000 – 3FFF		Reserved	
4000 – 7FFF	16K x 24	DSP x/DataO ROM	
8000 – 9FFF	8K x 24		
A000 – FFFF		Reserved	

# Table 189: DSP Data1 Memory (24bWword, word addressing)

Address	Size	Definition
0000 – 0FFF	4K x 24	DSP Data1 RAM
1000 – 3FFF		Reserved
4000 – 7FFF	16K x 24	DSP Data1 ROM

# Table 190: DSP Data1 Memory (24bit/word, word addressing)

Address	Size	Definition
8000 – 9FFF	8K x 24	Global RAM
A000 – FFFF		Reserved

# Table 191 DSP Peripheral Memory Map (24bitlword, word addressing)

Address	Size	Definition
0000 – 0FFF	4K x 24	DSP Internal Registers
1000 - 1 FFF	4K x 24	I2SIPWM

WSM Docket No.

2000 – 2FFF	4K x 24	DSP Debugger
3000 – 3FFF	4K x 24	PC
4000 – 4FFF	4K x 24	DSP Timer/Counter
5000 – 5FFF	4K x 24	DSP G/X/Y/Z RAM Weak-write Control
		Register
6000 – FFFF		Reserved

## 192: Hardware Modes (Boot-up Modes)

	TACKITR	TST[1:0]	PORTSTa1:0]
	STn		
Normal 32KHZ	X	11	)m
Normal ExtVCO	х	00	XX
TestOp VCObp	1	10	11
TestOp Xtalbp	0	10	11
Clocks Test	х	10	10
SCAN	X	10	01
ARM Off/bp	X	10	00
HiZ	x	at	11
VoL	0	01	10
VoH	1	01	10
XOR Tree	x	01	01
ARM ONby	х	01	00
Reserved			

WSM Docket No.

Table 193: Software Boot Sources

GPIO[3:0]	Boot Source
1111	Boot from NAND FLASH
1110	Boot from External memory (CSO)
1101	Boot from Reserved
1100	Boot from Reserved
1011	Boot from Reserved
1010	Boot From Reserved
1001	Boot from Reserved
1000	Boot from Reserved
0111	Boot from Reserved
0110	Boot from Reserved
0101	Boot from Reserved
0100	Boot from DART
0011	Boot from Reserved
0010	JTAG enabled then loop
0001	GPIO Slave Boot
0000	Test Code (Bur-in)

Table 194: SCAN Pins and Their Functions

Pin	Function
GPIO[9:0]	Scan Data In[9:0]
GPIO[19:10]	Scan Data Out[9:0]
GPIO[26:201	Scan Clock[8:0]

GPIO[29:271	Scan Reset Fix[2:0]
GPIO[30]	Scan Enable

**PATENT** 

# ATTORNEY CLOCKET NO.

1125-CS

251

SPI Receiving Data JTAG Data Output JTAG Clocks Input SPI Frame Signal Strength | DefaultValue | PullResistor | Description 100K Up 100K Up 100K Up 100K Up 4mA 4mA Digital Output Digital Output Digital Input Digital Input Type DiePad BGABall QFPPin Signal Name SPIFRM SPIRXD **TD0** 75 Table 195: 8 A 81 82 128 126 127

# ATTORNEY CLOCKET NO. 1125-CS

252

**PATENT** 

				1 1			
SPI Transmitting Data	SPI Serial Clock	Write Enable for Memory Space 4	Output Enable for Memory Space 4	3.3V supply for I/O ring	3.3V supply for I/O ring		Ground for I/O ring
100K Up	100K UP	100K UP	100KUP				
<del>-</del>	<b>7-</b>	<del>-</del>	-				
4mA	8mA	4mA	4mA	N/A	Y N	WA	A/A
Digital Output	Digital Output	Digital Output	Digital Output	Supply	Supply		Ground
SPITXD	SPICLK	CS4WEN	CS40EN	VDO RING	VDD_RING	SPEEDBND	GND
S	9	2	8	6	6	1	10
22	5	D3	D2	1			1
2	ო	4	2	9	9	7	æ

**PATENT** 

## ATTORNEY CLOCKET NO.

1125-CS

ω

253

Master Clocks for LCD display panel/GPIO pin <15> (default) LCD Frame SignaUGPIO pin LCDCL1/GPI013 pin <13> LCDCL2/GPIO pin <12> Ground for I/O ring <14> (default) (default) (default) 100K UP 100K UP 100K UP 100K UP 8mA 4mA 4mA 8mA N/A Digital InOut Digital InOut Digital InOut Digital InOut Ground LCDMCLK/ GPIO<15> LCDFRM/ GPIO<14> LCDCL2/ GPIO<12> LCDCLI/ GPIO<13> ONS GND 13 4 12 10 EЗ 四 E3 핍 2 9 Ξ

**PATENT** 

### ATTORNEY CLOCKET NO.

1125-CS

254

LCD <1>/ display Data GPIO pin 1.8V-2.5V supply for core circuit LCD display Data<0>/GPIO pin LCD display Data<2>/GPIO pin LCD display Data<3>/GPIO pin <10> (default) <12> (default) <8> (default) <9> (default) 100K UP 100K UP 100K UP 100K UP 4mA 4mA 4mA 4mA Υ× Digital InOut Digital InOut LCDDD<3>/GPIO<11> Digital InOut Digital InOut Supply LCDDD<2>/GPIO<10> LCDGD<1>/-GPIO<9> LCDDO<0>/ GPI0<8> \_ VDD\_CORE 19 9 15 9 17 63 <u>6</u>2 표 15 16 17 13 4

WSM Docket No.

2836- P139US

## ATTORNEY CLOCKET NO.

1125-CS

255

**PATENT** 

I.	- 1	T				
1.8V 2.5V supply for core circuit	ground for core circuit	ground for core circuit	GPIO pin <4>(default LCD	isplay Data<4>	GPIO pin <5>(defaultu LCD	display Data<5>
			100K UP		100K UP	
			-		-	
<b>W</b>	N/A	ž	4mA		44	
Supply	Ground	Ground	Digital InOut		Digital InOut	
VDD_CORE	GND	GND	GPIO<4>/ LCDDD<4>		GPIO<5>/ LCDDD<5>	
19	20	20	21		2	
•		1	G1		H3 - I	
17	18	18	19		20	

WSM Docket No.

2836- P139US

Table 193: Pin-Out in BGA and QFP Packages

21	H1	23	GPIO<6>/L	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	GPIO pin
			CDDD< 6>	InOut				<6>(default)/
								LCD display
								Data<6>
22	H2	24	GPIO<7>/L	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	GPIO pin
			CDDD<7>	InOut				<7>(default)/
								LCD display
								Data<7>
23	J2	25	AD<19>/G	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			PIO<19>	inOut				Address<
								19>(default)
								/GPIO pin <19>
24	11	26	AD< 18>/	Digital	4m A	1	100K UP	External Memory
	:		GPIO<18>	InOut				Address<
								18>(default)
								/GPIO pin <18>
25	J3	27	AD<17>/	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
	ļ		GPIO<17>	InOut				Address-0
								7>(defautt)
								/GPIO pin <17>
26	K1	28	AD< 16>/	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<16>	InOut				Address<16>(def
								autt) /GPIO pin
								<16>

WSM Docket No.

2836- P139US

27	-	29	VDD RING	Supply				3.3V supply for
								I/O ring
27	-	29	VDD RING	Supply		-		3.3V supply for
	ļ						:	I/O ring
28	-	30	GND	Ground				Ground for I/O
								ring
28	<b> -</b>	30	GND	Ground				Ground for I/O
								ring
29	K2	31	AD-05>/	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<31 >	InOut				Address<15>(def
								ault) / GPIO
								pin <31>
30	L1	32	AD<14>I	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<30>	InOut				Address<14>(def
								ault) / GPIO
								pin <30>
31	K3	33	AD<13>/	Digitat	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<29>	InOut				Address<13>(def
								ault) / GPIO pin
								<29>
32	L2	34	AD<12>/G	Digihl	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			PIO<28>	InOut				Address<
					a and a second			12>(default) /
								GPIO pin <28>
33	M1	35	AD<11>I	Digital	4mA	1	I 00K UP	External Memory
			GP10<27>	Inout				Address<11>(def

	1	1	ı	1	ı	ı	1	auR) / GPIO
						ļ., <u>.</u>		pin <27>
34	N2	36	AD<10>/	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<26>	InOut				Address<10>(def
								ault) / GPIO
								pin <26>
35	M3	37	AD<9>/	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<25>	InOut				Address<9>(defa
								ult) / GPIO
								pin <25>
36	N3	38	AD<8>/	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<24>	InOut				Address<8>(defa
								ult) / GPIO
								pin <24>
37	L4	39	AD<7>/	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<23>	InOut				Address<7>(defa
								ult) / GPIO
				_				pin <23>
38	M4	40	AD<6>/	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<22>	InOut				Address<6>(defa
								ult) / GPIO
ļ								pin <22>
39	N4	41	AD<5>/	Digital	4m A	1	100K UP	External Memory
			GPIO<21>	Ou				Address<5>(defa
								ult) / GPIO
								pin <21 >
40	L5	42	AD<4>/	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
į.	ı	į.	I	ŀ	1	1	ī	

Address<4>(defauf t) / GPIO pin <20>

			GPIO<20>	InOut				
41		43	VDD RING	Supply				3.3V supply for I/O
								ring
41		43	VDD RING	Supply				3.3V supply for I/O
		ĺ						ring
42		44	GND	Ground				Ground for I/O ring
42	<u> </u>	44	GND	Ground				Ground for I/O ring
43	M5	45	AD<3>	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
				Output				Address<>
44	N5	46	AD<2>	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
				Output				Address<2>
45	L6	47	AD<1>	Digital	4mA	1	100K UP	External Memory
				Output				Address< 1>
46	N6	48	AD<0>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	External Memory
				Output				Address<0>
47	M6	49	RDn	Digital	8mA	1	100K Up	External Memory
				Output				Read Enable
48	L7	50	WRn	Digital	8mA	1	100K Up	External Memory
				Output				Write Enable
49	N7	51	DA<0>	Digital	4mA	1	100K.Up	Data <o> for</o>
				InOut				External Memory
								Interface
50	M7	52	DA<1>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Data<1> for
				InOut				External Memory
	İ							Interface

51	LS	53	DA<2>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Data-<2> for
	,			InOut				External Memory
								Interface
52	M8	54	DA<3>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Data<3> for
				InOut				External Memory
								Interface
53	N8	55	DA<4>	Digital	4mA	1	I 00K Up	Data<4> for
				InOut				External Memory
								Interface
54	L9	56	DA<5>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Data<5> for
				inOut				External Memory
								Interface
55	N9	57	DA <s></s>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Data<6> for
				InOut				External Memory
				Ŀ				Interface
56	M9	58	DA<7>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Data-<7> for
				InOut				External Memory
								Interface
57	-	59	VDD_CORE	Supply	N/A			1.8V-2.5V supply
								for core circuit
57	-	59	VDD_CORE	Supply	N/A			15SV-2.5V supply
								for core circuit
58	-	60	_GND-	Ground	N/A			Ground for core
								circuit
58		60	GND	Ground	N/A			Ground for core
								circuit

59	-	61	VDD_RING	Supply	N/A			
59	<b>-</b>	61	VDD_RING	Supply	N/A			
60	-	62	GND	Ground	WA			
60	-	62	GND	Ground	N/A			
61	M10	63	DA<8>	Digital InOut	4mA	1	100K Up	Data<8> for External Memory Interface
62	N71	64	DA<9>	Digital InOut	4mA	1	100K Up	Data-<9> for External Memory Interface
63	M11	65	DA<10>	Digital InOut	4mA	1	100K Up	Data <10> for External Memory Interface
64	L10	66	DA<11>	Digital InOut	4mA	1	100K Up	Data< 11> for External Mem- cry Interface
65	N12	67	DA< 12>	Digital InOut	4mA	1	100K Up	Data<12> for External Memory Interface
66	M13	68	DA< 13>	Digital InOut	4mA	1	100K Up	Data< 13> for External Memory interface
67	L12	69	DA<14>	Digital InOut	4mA	1	100K Up	Data< 14> for External Memory Interface

68	L13	70	DA<15>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Data< 15> for
				InOut				External Memory
								Interface
69	K5	71	VDD RING	Supply				
69	K5	71	VDD RING	Supply				
70	-	72	GND	Ground				
70	-	72	GND	Ground				
71	K12	73	CSn<0>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Chip Select <0>
				Output				for External
								Memory Interface
72	K13	74	CSn<1>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Chip Select <1>
				Output				for External
								Memory Interface
73	K11	75	CSn<2>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Chip Select <2>
				Output				for External
								Memory Interface
74	J13	76	CSN<3>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Chip Select <3>
				Output				for External
								Memory Interface
75	J12	77	DQM<0>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Byte Enable <0>
				Output				
76	i11	78	DQM<1>	Digital	4mM	1	100K Up	Byte Enable <1>
				Output				
77	H13	79	DAIMCLK	Digital	8mA	1	100K Up	Digital Audio
			:	InOut				Interface Master
			,					Clocks

InOut  CK Digital InOut	4mA	1	100K Up	Interface Serial Clocks Digital Audio
	4mA	1	100K Up	
	4mA	1	100K Up	Digital Audio
InOut				-
	1			Interface LR
ı				Clocks
Digital		1	100K Up	Digital Audio
Input				Input Data
Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	Digital Audio
Output				Output Data
VDD Supply				PWM VDD for
				external
				components for
				L-Channel
. Analog				PWM L-channel
out				Output
.GN Ground				PWM Driver
				Ground for L-
				channel
RGN Ground				PWM Driver
				Ground for R-
				channel
	Input  Digital Output  VDD Supply  Analog out  GN Ground	Input  Digital 4mA Output  VDD Supply  Analog out  GN Ground	Input  Digital 4mA 1 Output  VDD Supply  Analog out  GN Ground	Input  Digital 4mA 1 100K Up  Output  Supply  Analog out  GN Ground

86	E11	89	PWMR	Analog				PWM R-channel
				out				Output
87	F12	90	PWMRVD	Supply				PWM VDD for
			D					external compo-
								nents far R-
								Channel
88	-	91	GND	Ground				
88	-	91	GND	Ground				
89	-	92	VDD	Supply				
			CORE					
89	-	92	VDD CORE	Supply				
90	E12	93	USBp	Analog				Use D+ pin
				InOut				
91	D12	94	USBn	Analog				Use D- pin
				InOut				
92	D13	95	GPIO<0>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	GPIO pin <0> with
				InOut				Interrupt
								capability
93	D11	98	GPIO<1>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	GPIO pin <1> with
				InOut				Interrupt
								capability
94	C13	97	GPIO<2>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	GPIO pin <2> with
				InOut				Interrupt
								capability
95	C12	98	GPIO<3>	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	GPIO pin <3> with
								Interrupt

				InOut				capability
98	-	99	VDD RING	Supply				
96	-	99	VDD_RING	Supply				
97	-	100	GND	Ground				
97	-	100	GND	Ground				
98	B12	101	UARTRXD	Digital Input		1	100K Up	UART input data
99	B11	102	UARTTXD	Digital Output	4mA	1	100K Up	UART output data
100	C11	103	STBYGND	Ground				Standby ground
101	A11	104	RTCXTALO	Analog Output				On-chip 32KHz Oscillator Output
102	B10	105	RTCXTALI	Analog Input.				On-chip 32KHz Oscillator Input
103	C10	108	STBYVDD	Supply				Standby 3.3V supply
104	A10	107	WAKEUP	Digital input				Wake up signal to exit stand-by mode
105	C9	108	STBYn	Digital Output	4mA	0		Super Stand-by mode (active low)
106	A9	109	PRSTn	Digital Input		1	60K Up	Power On Reset (active low)
107	В9	110	RSTOn	Digital Input		1	60K Up	User Reset (active low)

A8			Input	l	1	1	1
A8	į	ł	pat				loop filter (for main
A8							clocks)
	112	VIN<0>	Analog				Filter pin for PLL2
			input				finer topology (for
							main clocks)
B8	113	QVDD33	Supply				
C7	114	QGND33	Ground				
87	115	MTPFLT	Analog				Filter pin for PLL2
			InOut				finer topology (for
							USB)
A7	116	MLPFLT	Analog				Filter pin for PLL2
			InOut				loop Filter (for
							USB)
C6	117	UTPFLT	Analog				Voltage input <1 >
			InOut				for ADC
B6	118	ULPFLT	Analog				Voltage input <0>
			InOut				for ADC
A6	119	ASSIC/	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	DSP SSI debug
		PORTSTO	InOut,	-			clock / addi-
			Open				tional test mode
			Drain				selection by
			when in				PRSTn signal.
		:	DSP				
			SSI				
			debug				
		,	mode				
	·						
Dock	et No.						
P139	us						
	C7 87 A7 C6 B6 A6	C7 114 87 115 A7 116 C6 117 B6 118	C7         114         QGND33           87         115         MTPFLT           A7         116         MLPFLT           C6         117         UTPFLT           B6         118         ULPFLT           A6         119         ASSIC/PORTSTO           Docket No.         Docket No.	C7 114 QGND33 Ground  87 115 MTPFLT Analog InOut  A7 116 MLPFLT Analog InOut  C6 117 UTPFLT Analog InOut  B6 118 ULPFLT Analog InOut  A6 119 ASSIC/ Digital PORTSTO InOut, Open Drain when in DSP SSI debug mode  Docket No.	C7 114 QGND33 Ground  87 115 MTPFLT Analog InOut  A7 116 MLPFLT Analog InOut  C6 117 UTPFLT Analog InOut  B6 118 ULPFLT Analog InOut  A6 119 ASSIC/ Digital AmA  PORTSTO InOut, Open Drain when in DSP  SSI debug mode  Docket No.	C7 114 QGND33 Ground  87 115 MTPFLT Analog InOut  A7 116 MLPFLT Analog InOut  C6 117 UTPFLT Analog InOut  B6 118 ULPFLT Analog InOut  A6 119 ASSIC/ Digital AmA 1  PORTSTO InOut, Open Drain when in DSP SSI debug mode  Docket No.	C7

117	C5	120	A12CD/	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	DSP SSI debug
			PORTSTI	InOut,				data / additional
				Open				test mode
				Drain				selection by
	:			when in	1			PRSTn signal.
				DSP				
				SSI				
				debug				
				mode				
118	A5	121	EXTCLKI	Digital		1		External Clocks
				Input				Input
119	B5	122	EECLK	Digital	8mA	1	100K Up	ARM SSI
				Output				peripheral clock.
120	C4	123	EEDAT	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	ARM SSI
				InOut				peripheral data.
121	A4	124	TEST<1>/	Digital		1	100K Up	Test Mode 1/TIC
			TREQB	Input				Req B
122	B4	125	TEST<0>/	Digital		1	100K Up	Test Mode O/TIC
			TREQA	Input				Req A
123	C3	126	TACK/TRS	Digital	4mA	1	100K Up	TIC
			Tn	InOut				Acknowledge/JT
								AG Reset
124	A3	127	TMS	Digital		1	100K Up	JTAG mode
				Input				selection

125	B3	128	TDI	Digital	1	100K Up	JTAG data input
				Input			
	L11		GND				
	M12		GND				
	N13		GND				
	D7		GND				
	D9		GND		 		
	F10		GND				
	J10		GND				
	K7		GND.				
	K9		GND				
	K10		GND			***************************************	
	05		GND				
	E4		GND				
	G4		GND				
	H4		GND				
······································	K6		GND				
	D8		VDD				
			CORE				
	E10		VDD				
			CORE				
	K8		VDD_COR				
			E				
	D6		VDD_COR				
			E				
	F4		VDD				

	CORE		
D10	VDD RING		
04	VDD RING		
 G10	VDD RING		
 H10	VDD RING		
 J4	VDD RING		
K4	VDD RING		
 K5	VDD RING		
L3	VDD RING		
M2	VDD RING		
N1	VDD RING		
N10	NC1		
 813	NC2		
A13	NC3		
A12	NC4		
D1	NC5		